

## Project Manual

# Construction Documents

## Liberty District Renovations

**Discovery Middle School – Project No. 23018**  
800 Midjay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068

**South Valley Middle School – Project No. 23019**  
1000 Midjay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068

**EPiC – Project No. 23020**  
650 Conistor St, Liberty, Missouri 64068

Prepared For:  
**Liberty Public Schools**  
8 Victory Lane  
Liberty, Missouri 64068

HM Project No: 23018  
HM Project No: 23019  
HM Project No: 23020  
Issue Date: August 31, 2023

### **Contents:**

Volume 1: Introductory Information, Bidding and Contracting Requirements,  
Division 1 – Division 12.

Volume 2: Division 21 through Division 33.



we design the future®

**HOLLISANDMILLER.COM**

1828 Walnut Street Suite 922 | Kansas City, MO 64108 | 816.442.7700  
Missouri | Colorado



## **SECTION 000101 - PROJECT TEAM DIRECTORY**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 CONSTRUCTION MANAGER INFORMATION**

- A. Newkirk Novak Construction Partners has been selected as the Construction Manager for this project, and as such, will act as the Owner's representative.
- B. All communication, both written and oral, must be directed through the Construction Manager.

#### **1.2 PROJECT TEAM INFORMATION**

##### **A. PROJECT:**

- 1. Project Number and Name:
  - a. 23018 - Discovery Middle School
    - 1) Location: 800 Midjay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068
  - b. 23019 - South Valley Middle School
    - 1) Location: 1000 Midjay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068
  - c. 23020 - EPiC Elementary School
    - 1) Location: 650 Conister Street, Liberty, Missouri 64068

##### **B. OWNER:**

- 1. Name: Liberty Public Schools
- 2. Address: 8 Victory Lane, Liberty, MO 64068
- 3. Contact: Steve Anderson
- 4. Phone: 816.736.5300

##### **C. CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:**

- 1. Name: Newkirk Novak Construction Partners
- 2. Address: 11200 W. 79th Street, Lenexa, Kansas 66241
- 3. Contact: Brandon Stanley
- 4. Email: Brandon.Stanley@newkirknovak.com
- 5. Phone: 913.312.9535.

##### **D. ARCHITECT:**

- 1. Name: Hollis + Miller Architects, Inc.
- 2. Address: 1828 Walnut Street, Suite 922, Kansas City, MO 64108.
- 3. Contact: Kyle LaBarre.
- 4. Email: klabarre@hollisandmiller.com
- 5. Phone: 816.442.7700 / Fax: 816.599.2545

##### **E. CIVIL ENGINEER:**

- 1. Name: MKEC Engineering, Inc.
- 2. Address: 11827 W 112th Street, Suite 200, Overland Park, Kansas 66210.
- 3. Contact: Brandom Taylor OR Brian Hill.
- 4. Email: btaylor@mkec.com OR bhill@mkec.com
- 5. Phone: 913.317.9390.

##### **F. STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:**

- 1. Name: Bob D. Campbell & Co.
- 2. Address: 4338 Belleview Ave, Kansas City, Missouri 64111.
- 3. Contact: Wayne Davis
- 4. Email: wdavis@bdc-engrs.com
- 5. Phone: 816.531.4114 / Fax: 816.531.8572

##### **G. MEP ENGINEER:**

- 1. Name: Smith and Boucher
- 2. Address: 25618 W 103rd Street, Olathe, Kansas 66061.

3. Contact: Jeremy Graham -Mechanical and Plumbing Engineer
4. Email: jgraham@smithandboucher.com
5. Contact: Jeremy Enszt - Electrical Engineer
6. Email: jenszt@smithboucher.com
7. Phone: 913.345.2127.

H. ACOUSTICIAN:

1. Name: Avant Acoustics
2. Address: 14827 West 95th Street, Lenexa, Kansas 66215.
3. Contact: John Hodgson.
4. Email: jhodgson@avantacoustics.com.
5. Phone: 913.888.9111.

I. GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERS:

1. Name: Kruger Technologies, Inc.
2. Address: 8721 Melrose Drive, Lenexa, Kansas 66214
3. Contact: Dylan Kruger
4. Email: dzkruger@ktionline.com
5. Phone: 913.498.1114 / Fax: 913.498.1116

J. FOOD SERVICE CONSULTANT:

1. Name: MHA Food Facility Consultants
2. Address: 7840 Conser Street, Overland Park, Kansas 66204
3. Contact: Mike Terlouw.
4. Email: mike@mhaconsulting.com.
5. Phone: 785.266.5696.

K. THEATRICAL CONSULTANT:

1. Name: Peerbolte Creative
2. Address: 109 E. Pine Street, Warrensburg, Missouri 64093.
3. Contact: Shannon C. Johnson.
4. Email: shannon@peerbolte.com.
5. Phone: 660.429.1383 x2.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 000101



**SECTION 000105 - CERTIFICATIONS PAGE**

ARCHITECT

I HEREBY, PURSUANT TO RSMO 327.411, STATE THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS INTENDED TO BE AUTHENTICATED BY MY SEAL ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

DIVISION 1 SECTIONS: 011000, 012100, 012200, 012300, 012500, 013100, 013200, 013233, 014000, 014200, 014529, 016000, 017419, 017700, 017823, 017839, 017900.  
DIVISION 2 SECTION: 024119.  
DIVISION 3 SECTION: 034100.  
DIVISION 4 SECTION: 042000.  
DIVISION 5 SECTIONS: 055000, 055100, 055213.  
DIVISION 6 SECTIONS: 061000, 061600, 064023.  
DIVISION 7 SECTIONS: 071326, 071416, 072100, 072726, 074213, 074243, 074400, 074800, 075216, 075423, 076200, 077200, 078100, 078413, 078446, 079200, 079500.  
DIVISION 8 SECTIONS: 081113, 081416, 084113, 087100, 088000.  
DIVISION 9 SECTIONS: 092116, 092900, 093000, 095113, 096466, 096513, 096566, 096723, 096813, 097723, 097253, 098433, 098436, 099113, 099123, 099600, 099723.  
DIVISION 10 SECTIONS: 101100, 101400, 101423, 102113, 102238, 102600, 102800, 104300, 104413, 104416.  
DIVISION 11 SECTIONS: 116143, 116623, 116653.  
DIVISION 12 SECTIONS: 122413, 123200, 123666, 126600.  
DIVISION 34 SECTION: 334600.

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.

KEVIN E. NELSON

AUGUST 31, 2023

ARCHITECT

DATE



*AUGUST 31, 2023*



## SECTION 000105 – CERTIFICATIONS & SEALS

### Civil Engineer:

I hereby state, pursuant to RSMo 327.411, that the Specifications intended to be authenticated by my seal are limited to Specification Sections listed below:

Division 31 Sections: 311000 & 312000  
Division 32 Sections: 321216, 321313, 321373, & 323113  
Division 33 Sections: 333100 & 334100

I hereby disclaim any responsibility for all other specifications, drawings estimates, reports, or other documents or instruments relating to or intended to be used for any part or parts of the architectural or engineering project or survey.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Engineers:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date






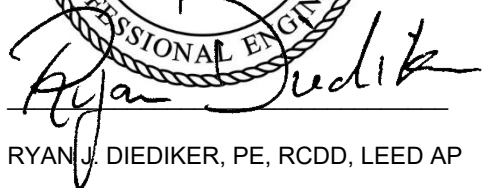
## SECTION 000105 - CERTIFICATIONS PAGE-MEP

MEP ENGINEER

I HEREBY, PURSUANT TO RSMO 327.411, STATE THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS INTENDED TO BE AUTHENTICATED BY MY SEAL ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

DIVISION 21 SECTIONS:	210500, 211200, 211313
DIVISION 22 SECTIONS:	220500, 220513, 220516, 220517, 220518, 220519, 220523, 220529, 220553, 220719, 221116, 221119, 221123, 221316, 221319, 221413, 221423, 223300, 224000, 224700
DIVISION 23 SECTIONS:	230500, 230513, 230525, 230548, 230553, 230593, 230713, 230719, 230900, 231123, 232300, 233113, 233300, 233416, 233713, 237416.11, 237416.13, 238126, 238239
DIVISION 26 SECTIONS:	260500, 260519, 260523, 260526, 260529, 260533, 260553, 260923, 260943, 262200, 262416, 262726, 262813, 262816, 263323, 264113, 265119, 265219, 265619
DIVISION 27 SECTIONS:	270000, 270500, 270526, 270536, 275116, 275145
DIVISION 28 SECTIONS	280500, 280513, 283111

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.

  
  
RYAN J. DIEDIKER, PE, RCDD, LEED AP

08.31.2023  
DATE



**SECTION 000105 - CERTIFICATIONS PAGE**

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER

I HEREBY, PURSUANT TO RSMO 327.411, STATE THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS INTENDED TO BE AUTHENTICATED BY MY SEAL ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

DIVISION 1 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 2 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 3 SECTIONS:	033000
DIVISION 4 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 5 SECTIONS:	051200, 052100, 053100, 054000
DIVISION 6 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 7 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 8 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 9 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 10 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 11 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 12 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 13 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 14 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 31 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 32 SECTIONS:	
DIVISION 33 SECTIONS:	

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.

RYAN M. HAGEDORN

8/31/2023

ENGINEER

DATE







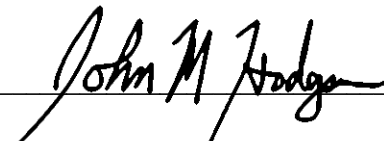
**CERTIFICATION PAGE**

AV/ACOUSTICAL CONSULTANT

I HEREBY STATE, THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS UNDER MY RESPONSIBILITY ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

DIVISION 27 SECTIONS:	274116
-----------------------	--------

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.

  
ACOUSTICAL CONSULTANT

AUGUST 31, 2023

DATE



**DOCUMENT 000110 – TABLE OF CONTENTS**

Project Name: Liberty School District Renovations

Project No. &amp; Locations:

23018- Discovery Middle School  
800 Midjay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068  
23019- South Valley Middle School  
1000 Midjay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068  
23020- EPiC Elementary School  
650 Conistor Street, Liberty, Missouri 64068

Revisions	Date

Latest Revision      Original Issue

**INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION**

000101	Project Team Directory	08.31.2023
000105	Certifications and Seals	08.31.2023
000110	Table of Contents	08.31.2023

**BIDDING REQUIREMENTS**

(Refer to Construction Manager's Front End Manual for additional Bidding Requirements)

**BIDDING REQUIREMENTS**

003132	Geotechnical Data	08.31.2023
--------	-------------------	------------

**CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

(Refer to Construction Manager's Front End Manual for additional Contracting Requirements)

**DIVISION 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

011000	Summary	08.31.2023
012100	Allowances	08.31.2023
012200	Unit Prices	08.31.2023
012300	Alternates	08.31.2023
012500	Substitution Procedures	08.31.2023
013100	Project Management and Coordination	08.31.2023
013200	Construction Progress Documentation	08.31.2023
013233	Photographic Documentation	08.31.2023
014000	Quality Requirements	08.31.2023
014200	References	08.31.2023
014529	Testing and Inspections	08.31.2023
016000	Product Requirements	08.31.2023
017419	Construction Waste Management & Disposal	08.31.2023
017700	Closeout Procedures	08.31.2023
017823	Operation and Maintenance Data	08.31.2023
017839	Project Record Documents	08.31.2023
017900	Demonstration and Training	08.31.2023

**DIVISION 2 – EXISTING CONDITIONS**

024119	Selective Demolition	08.31.2023
--------	----------------------	------------

**DIVISION 3 – CONCRETE**

033000	Cast-in-Place Concrete	08.31.2023
034100	Precast Structural Concrete	08.31.2023

**DIVISION 4 - MASONRY**

042000	Unit Masonry	08.31.2023
--------	--------------	------------

**DIVISION 5 - METALS**

051200	Structural Steel Framing	08.31.2023
052100	Steel Joist Framing	08.31.2023
053100	Steel Decking	08.31.2023
054000	Cold-Formed Metal Framing	08.31.2023
055000	Metal Fabrications	08.31.2023
055100	Metal Stairs	08.31.2023
055213	Pipe and Tube Railings	08.31.2023

DIVISION 6 – WOOD AND PLASTICS

061000	Rough Carpentry	08.31.2023
061600	Sheathing	08.31.2023
064023	Interior Architectural Woodwork	08.31.2023

DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

071326	Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing	08.31.2023
071416	Cold Fluid Applied Waterproofing	08.31.2023
072100	Thermal Insulation	08.31.2023
072726	Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barrier	08.31.2023
074213	Formed Metal Wall and Soffit Panels	08.31.2023
074243	Metal Composite Material Wall Panels	08.31.2023
074400	Concrete Faced Rigid Insulation	08.31.2023
074800	Rainscreen Furring System	08.31.2023
075216	Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing	08.31.2023
075423	Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing	08.31.2023
076200	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim	08.31.2023
077200	Roof Accessories	08.31.2023
078100	Applied Fireproofing	08.31.2023
078413	Penetration Firestopping	08.31.2023
078446	Fire Resistive Joint Systems	08.31.2023
079200	Joint Sealants	08.31.2023
079500	Expansion Control	08.31.2023

DIVISION 8 - DOORS AND WINDOWS

081113	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames	08.31.2023
081416	Flush Wood Doors	08.31.2023
084113	Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts	08.31.2023
087100	Door Hardware	08.31.2023
088000	Glazing	08.31.2023

DIVISION 9 - FINISHES

092116	Non-Structural Metal Framing	08.31.2023
092900	Gypsum Board	08.31.2023
093000	Tiling	08.31.2023
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings	08.31.2023
096466	Wood Athletic and Stage Flooring	08.31.2023
096513	Resilient Base and Accessories	08.31.2023
096566	Resilient Athletic Flooring	08.31.2023
096723	Resinous Flooring	08.31.2023
096813	Tile Carpeting	08.31.2023
097253	Digital Wall Coverings	08.31.2023
097723	Fabric-Wrapped Panels	08.31.2023
098433	Acoustical Wall Units	08.31.2023
098436	Acoustical Ceiling Units	08.31.2023
099113	Exterior Painting	08.31.2023
099123	Interior Painting	08.31.2023
099600	High-Performance Coatings	08.31.2023
099723	Concrete and Masonry Coatings	08.31.2023

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

101100	Visual Display Units	08.31.2023
101400	Signage	08.31.2023
101423	ADA and Code Signage	08.31.2023
102113	Toilet Compartments	08.31.2023
102238	Operable Panel Partitions	08.31.2023
102600	Wall and Door Protection	08.31.2023
102800	Toilet, Bath & Laundry Accessories	08.31.2023
104300	Emergency Aid Specialties	08.31.2023
104413	Fire Extinguisher Cabinets	08.31.2023
104416	Fire Extinguishers	08.31.2023

	Latest Revision	Original Issue
DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT		
114000	Food Service Equipment	08.31.2023
116100	Theatrical Lighting Equipment	08.31.2023
116133	Theatrical Rigging and Curtains ( <i>Discovery and South Valley Middle School</i> )	08.31.2023
116143	Stage Curtains ( <i>EPiC Elementary School</i> )	08.31.2023
116623	Gymnasium Equipment	08.31.2023
116653	Gymnasium Dividers	08.31.2023
DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS		
122413	Roller Window Shades	08.31.2023
123200	Manufactured Wood Casework	08.31.2023
123666	Solid Surfacing Countertops	08.31.2023
DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION		
210500	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression	08.31.2023
211200	Fire-Suppression Standpipes	08.31.2023
211313	Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems	08.31.2023
DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING		
220500	Common Work Results for Plumbing	08.31.2023
220513	Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment	08.31.2023
220516	Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping	08.31.2023
220517	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping	
220518	Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping	08.31.2023
220519	Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping	08.31.2023
220523	General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping	08.31.2023
220529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	08.31.2023
220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	08.31.2023
220719	Plumbing Piping Insulation	08.31.2023
221116	Domestic Water Piping	08.31.2023
221119	Domestic Water Piping Specialties	08.31.2023
221123	Domestic Water Pumps	08.31.2023
221316	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping	08.31.2023
221319	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties	08.31.2023
221413	Storm Drainage Piping	08.31.2023
221423	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties	08.31.2023
223300	Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters	08.31.2023
224000	Plumbing Fixtures	08.31.2023
224700	Drinking Fountain and Water Coolers	08.31.2023
DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING		
230500	Common Work Results for HVAC	08.31.2023
230513	Common Motors Requirements for HVAC Equipment	08.31.2023
230525	Equipment Screening for HVAC	08.31.2023
230548	Vibration Controls for HVAC	08.31.2023
230553	HVAC System Identification	08.31.2023
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	08.31.2023
230713	Duct Insulation	08.31.2023
230719	HVAC Piping Insulation	08.31.2023
230900	Instrumentation and Control for HVAC	08.31.2023
231123	Facility Natural-Gas Piping	08.31.2023
232300	Refrigerant Piping	08.31.2023
233113	Metal Ducts	08.31.2023
233300	Duct Accessories	08.31.2023
233416	Centrifugal HVAC Fans	08.31.2023
233713	Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles	08.31.2023
237416.11	Packaged, Small-Capacity, Rooftop Air-Conditioning Units	08.31.2023
237416.13	Packaged, Large-Capacity, Rooftop Air-Conditioning Units	08.31.2023
238126	Split-System Air-Conditioners	08.31.2023
238239	Cabinet Unit Heaters	08.31.2023

	Latest Revision	Original Issue
<b>DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL</b>		
260500	Common Work Results for Electrical	08.31.2023
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables	08.31.2023
260523	Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables	08.31.2023
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260529	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260533	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260923	Lighting Control Devices	08.31.2023
260943	Distributed Digital Lighting Control System	08.31.2023
262200	Transformers	08.31.2023
262416	Panelboards	08.31.2023
262726	Wiring Devices	08.31.2023
262813	Fuses	08.31.2023
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	08.31.2023
263323	Central Battery Equipment for Emergency Lighting	08.31.2023
264113	Lightning Protection for Structures	08.31.2023
265119	LED Interior Lighting	08.31.2023
265219	Emergency and Exit Lighting	08.31.2023
265500	Theatrical Equipment Hook-Up	08.31.2023
265619	LED Exterior Lighting	08.31.2023
<b>DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS</b>		
270000	District Cabling Specifications (LPS Standard)	08.31.2023
270500	Common Work Results for Communications	08.31.2023
270526	Grounding and Bonding for Communications	08.31.2023
270536	Cable Trays for Communications Systems	08.31.2023
274116	Audio Video Systems	08.31.2023
275116	Public Address Systems	08.31.2023
275145	Two-Way Emergency Responder Radio System	
<b>DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL AND INTRUSION DETECTION</b>		
280500	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security	08.31.2023
280513	Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security	08.31.2023
283111	Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System	08.31.2023
<b>DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK</b>		
311000	Site Clearing	08.31.2023
312000	Earth Moving	08.31.2023
<b>DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS</b>		
321216	Asphalt Paving	08.31.2023
321313	Concrete Paving	08.31.2023
321373	Concrete Paving Joint Sealants	08.31.2023
323113	Chain Link Fences and Gates	08.31.2023
<b>DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES</b>		
333100	Sanitary Utility Sewerage Piping	08.31.2023
334100	Storm Utility Drainage Piping	08.31.2023
334600	Subdrainage	08.31.2023

**END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS**

## **SECTION 210500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 3. Sleeves.
  - 4. Escutcheons.
  - 5. Grout.
  - 6. Concrete bases.
  - 7. Supports and anchorages.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for Fire-Suppression Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

#### **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate layout and installation with all other trades. Refer to section 230500 'Common Work Results for HVAC', paragraphs 1.3 and 1.4 for specific requirements regarding coordination procedures required.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series or BAg1, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining CPVC Plastic Piping: ASTM F 493.

### 2.3 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- B. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- C. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
- D. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

### 2.4 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.



## 2.5 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

## 2.6 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- N. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
  - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.

3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- O. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- P. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- Q. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- R. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.3 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Construct concrete bases a minimum of 4 inches and a maximum of 6 inches deep, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" or "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.4 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.5 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.6 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for fire-suppression equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

**END OF SECTION 210500**



## **SECTION 211200 - FIRE-SUPPRESSION STANDPIPES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
  - 2. Fire-protection specialty valves.
  - 3. Hose connections.
  - 4. Alarm devices.
  - 5. Manual control stations.
  - 6. Control panels.
  - 7. Pressure gages.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 210500 "Common Work Results for Fire Protection" for additional submittal requirements.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Standard-Pressure Standpipe Piping: Fire-suppression standpipe piping designed to operate at working pressure 175 psig maximum.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Refer to Section 210500 "Common Work Results for Fire Protection" for additional submittal requirements.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product.
- C. Shop Drawings: For fire-suppression standpipes.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For standpipe systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer or licensed fire sprinkler contractor responsible for their preparation.

#### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Refer to Section 210500 "Common Work Results for Fire Protection" for additional submittal requirements.
- B. Qualification Data: For licensed fire sprinkler contractor or professional engineer.
- C. Approved Standpipe Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 14, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 14. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping" and "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Underground Piping."
- E. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-suppression standpipes specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing fire-suppression standpipes. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
    - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer or licensed fire sprinkler contractor.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. NFPA Standards: Fire-suppression standpipe equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with NFPA 14.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Manual Wet-Type, Class I Standpipe System: Includes NPS 2-1/2 hose connections. Has small water supply to maintain water in standpipes. Piping is wet, but water must be pumped into standpipes to satisfy demand. AHJ approval required.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standard-Pressure, Fire-Suppression Standpipe System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- B. Delegated Design: Design fire-suppression standpipes, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer or licensed fire sprinkler contractor, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Pipe sizes shall be as required by NFPA Standards but in no case less than those shown on the drawings or specified.
- D. Fire-suppression standpipe design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
- F. Seismic Performance: Fire-suppression standpipes shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 14 and ASCE/SEI 7.

### 2.3 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.4 BLACK STEEL PIPE AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

- A. Schedule 40: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.
- B. Schedule 10: ASTM A 135/A 135M or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.
- C. Uncoated, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.
- D. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- E. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- F. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.

G. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

H. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International
  - b. Corcoran Piping System Co.
  - c. National Fittings, Inc
  - d. Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc
  - e. Smith-Cooper International
  - f. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - g. Victaulic Company
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
3. Galvanized and Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.5 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

A. Schedule 40: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.

B. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

C. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions:

1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
2. Hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
4. Threaded ends.

E. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

F. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International
  - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products
  - c. Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc
  - d. Victaulic Company
2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Galvanized, ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106/A 106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
3. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
  - a. AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions.
  - b. Ferrous housing sections.
  - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - d. Bolts and nuts.
  - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
    - 1) NPS 8 and Smaller: 600 psig.
    - 2) NPS 10 and NPS 12: 400 psig.
    - 3) NPS 14 to NPS 24: 250 psig.

## 2.6 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.

1. Class 125, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 150, Bronze Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
2. Class 250, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 300, Steel Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.

B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 SPECIALTY VALVES

### A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
2. Pressure Rating:
  - a. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175 psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

### B. Alarm Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation
  - b. Kidde Fire Fighting
  - c. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The)
  - d. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - e. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
  - f. Victaulic Company
  - g. Viking Corporation
2. Standard: UL 193.
3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.
6. Wet, Pilot-Line Trim Set: Include gage to read push-rod chamber pressure and connection for actuation device.

## 2.8 HOSE CONNECTIONS

### A. Nonadjustable-Valve Hose Connections:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc
  - b. Fire Protection Products, Inc
  - c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation
  - d. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc
  - e. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - f. Kidde Fire Fighting
  - g. Mueller Co
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Potter Roemer LLC
  - j. Tyco Fire Products LP
  - k. Viking Corporation
  - l. Zurn Industries, LLC
2. Standard: UL 668 hose valve for connecting fire hose.
3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
4. Material: Brass or bronze.
5. Size: NPS 1-1/2 or NPS 2-1/2, as indicated.
6. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
7. Outlet: Male hose threads with lugged cap, gasket, and chain. Include hose valve threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
8. Pattern: Angle or gate.
9. Finish: Rough brass or bronze.

## 2.9 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

## 2.10 PRESSURE GAGES

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AMETEK, Inc.
2. Ashcroft Inc
3. Brecco Corporation
4. WIKA Instrument Corporation



- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig minimum.
- E. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.
- F. Air System Piping Gage: Include retard feature and "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for hose connections and stations to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable thickness, fire- and smoke-rated construction, framing for hose-station cabinets, and other conditions where hose connections and stations are to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect fire-suppression standpipe piping to water-service piping at service entrance into building.
- B. Install shutoff valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories at connection to fire-suppression water-service piping.
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water service.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements in NFPA 14 for installation of fire-suppression standpipe piping.
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements in NFPA 14 for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.
- D. Install listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install drain valves on standpipes. Extend drain piping to outside of building.
- F. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valves to drain piping between fire-department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or outside building.
- G. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- H. Install hangers and supports for standpipe system piping according to NFPA 14.
- I. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- J. Fill wet-type standpipe system piping with water.
- K. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

- L. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- M. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

#### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes, and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- H. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- I. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

#### 3.5 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 14 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. General Requirements: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Alarm Valves: Install bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

#### 3.6 HOSE-CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install hose connections adjacent to standpipes.
- B. Install NPS 2-1/2 hose connections with quick-disconnect NPS 2-1/2 by NPS 1-1/2 reducer adapter and flow-restricting device.

#### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 14.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.

#### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Flush, test, and inspect standpipe systems according to NFPA 14, "System Acceptance" Chapter.
4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
5. Start and run air compressors.
6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.

B. Fire-suppression standpipe system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

B. Standard-pressure, wet-type fire-suppression standpipe piping, shall be the following:

1. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

### 3.11 FIELD PAINTING

A. Painting of fire-suppression standpipe systems above suspended ceilings is not required.

B. Clean, prime, and paint exposed fire-suppression standpipe piping, valves, hangers, accessories, and miscellaneous metal work. Refer to Division 09.

C. Clean surfaces prior to painting. Immediately after cleaning, prime metal surfaces with SSPC Paint 25 or SSPC Paint 25 metal primer applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.04 mm 1.5 mils.

D. Exercise care to avoid painting operating devices.

E. Finish primed surfaces as follows:

1. Systems in Finished Areas
  - a. Finished areas are defined as areas where walls or ceilings are painted or are constructed of a prefinished material. Paint primed surfaces with two coats of paint to match adjacent surfaces, except paint valves and operating accessories with two coats of gloss red enamel.
2. Systems in Unfinished Areas
  - a. Paint piping in valve rooms and mechanical rooms with CID A-A-2962 gloss red enamel applied to a minimum dry film thickness of 0.04 mm 1.6 mils.

## END OF SECTION 211200



## SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
  - 2. Fire-protection valves.
  - 3. Fire-department connections.
  - 4. Sprinklers.
  - 5. Excess-pressure pumps.
  - 6. Alarm devices.
  - 7. Pressure gages.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for standpipe piping.

#### 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and that is connected to water supply through alarm valve. Water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.
- B. Deluge Sprinkler System: Open sprinklers are attached to piping connected to water supply through deluge valve. Fire-detection system, in same area as sprinklers, opens valve. Water flows into piping system and discharges from attached sprinklers when valve opens.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- B. Delegated Design: Design sprinkler system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. Engage utility for a flow test to confirm pressures and flows.
- C. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
  - 2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
    - a. Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - b. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - c. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - d. Laundries: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - e. Libraries except Stack Areas: Light Hazard.
    - f. Library Stack Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
    - g. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - h. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.
    - i. Repair Garages: Ordinary Hazard, Group 2.
    - j. Restaurant Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - k. Solvent Cleaning Areas: Extra Hazard, Group 2.
  - 3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
    - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    - d. Special Occupancy Hazard: As determined by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: Per UL listing.
  - 5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
    - a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft.
    - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
    - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
    - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.

- e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- 6. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.
- E. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- F. Welding certificates.
- G. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- H. Field quality-control reports.
- I. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
    - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. NFPA Standards: Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
  - 1. NFPA 13, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
  - 2. NFPA 13R, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height."
  - 3. NFPA 24, "Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials, and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

#### 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard Weight, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

- B. Schedule 30, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135; ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E; or ASME B36.10M, wrought steel; with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Thinwall Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, threadable, with wall thickness less than Schedule 30 and equal to or greater than Schedule 10. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- D. Galvanized and Black Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- E. Galvanized and uncoated, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865, threaded.
- F. Galvanized and uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- G. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- H. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- I. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
- J. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
- K. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - c. Victaulic Company.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
  - 3. Galvanized and Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  - 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.
  - 1. Class 125, Cast-Iron Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.4 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Valves shall be UL listed or FM approved.
  - 2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- B. Check Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
    - b. Anvil International, Inc.
    - c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - g. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
    - h. Fire Protection Products, Inc.

- i. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
  - j. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - k. Metraflex, Inc.
  - l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - m. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
  - n. NIBCO INC.
  - o. Potter Roemer.
  - p. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  - q. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - r. United Brass Works, Inc.
  - s. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
  - t. Victaulic Company.
  - u. Viking Corporation.
  - v. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - w. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL 312.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum
  - 4. Type: Swing check.
  - 5. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - 6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- C. Bronze OS&Y Gate Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
    - e. United Brass Works, Inc.
    - f. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: UL 262.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - 4. Body Material: Bronze.
  - 5. End Connections: Threaded.
- D. Iron OS&Y Gate Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
    - b. American Valve, Inc.
    - c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - g. Hammond Valve.
    - h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - i. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
    - j. NIBCO INC.
    - k. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - l. United Brass Works, Inc.
    - m. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - n. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: UL 262.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum
  - 4. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  - 5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- E. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Global Safety Products, Inc.
    - c. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO INC.
    - f. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - g. Victaulic Company.
    - h. Pre-approved equal.



2. Standard: UL 1091.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:
  - a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
  - b. Body Material: Bronze.
  - c. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  - a. Valve Type: Butterfly.
  - b. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  - c. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or wafer.
6. Valve Operation: Integral electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, single-circuit, supervisory switch or electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, two-circuit, supervisory switch and visual indicating device.

## 2.5 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

- A. General Requirements:
  1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- B. Ball Valves:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
    - c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
    - d. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
    - e. Flowserve.
    - f. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
    - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - h. NIBCO INC.
    - i. Potter Roemer.
    - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - k. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - l. Victaulic Company.
    - m. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - n. Pre-approved equal.

## 2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. General Requirements:
  1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  4. Size: Same as connected piping.
  5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- B. Alarm Valves:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
    - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
    - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    - d. Victaulic Company.
    - e. Viking Corporation.
    - f. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Standard: UL 193.
  3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
  4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
  5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
  6. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.
- C. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. AFAC Inc.
  - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - d. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL 1726.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
  - 4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
  - 5. Size: NPS 3/4.
  - 6. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.7 SPRINKLER SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

### A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. National Fittings, Inc.
  - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - d. Victaulic Company.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL 213.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- 4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
- 5. Type: Mechanical-T and -cross fittings.
- 6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
- 7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
- 8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

### B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
  - d. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- 4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
- 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

### C. Branch Line Testers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
  - b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
  - c. Potter Roemer.
  - d. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: UL 199.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- 4. Body Material: Brass.
- 5. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 6. Inlet: Threaded.
- 7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
- 8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

### D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
  - b. Triple R Specialty.
  - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - d. Victaulic Company.
  - e. Viking Corporation.
  - f. Pre-approved equal.

2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CECA, LLC.
  - b. Corcoran Piping System Co.
  - c. Merit Manufacturing; a division of Anvil International, Inc.
  - d. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible, Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fivalco Inc.
  - b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
  - c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
  - d. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

## 2.8 SPRINKLERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
2. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
3. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
4. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
5. Victaulic Company.
6. Viking Corporation.
7. Pre-approved equal.

B. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating for Residential Sprinklers: 175 psig maximum.
3. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175 psig minimum.
4. Pressure Rating for High-Pressure Automatic Sprinklers: 250 psig minimum.

C. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:

1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
3. Residential Applications: UL 1626.
4. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

D. Sprinkler Finishes:

1. Chrome plated.
2. Bronze.
3. Painted.

E. Special Coatings:

1. Wax.
2. Lead.

3. Corrosion-resistant paint.

F. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.

1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch vertical adjustment.
2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.

G. Sprinkler Guards:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
  - d. Viking Corporation.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.9 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
  - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
  - d. Viking Corporation.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: UL 753.
3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
5. Size: 10-inch diameter.
6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
8. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.

C. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ADT Security Services, Inc.
  - b. McDonnell & Miller; ITT Industries.
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.
  - d. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
  - e. Viking Corporation.
  - f. Watts Industries (Canada) Inc.
  - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

D. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
  - b. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.
  - d. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.

5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

## 2.10 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.
  2. Ashcroft, Inc.
  3. Brecco Corporation.
  4. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
  5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0 to 250 psig minimum.
- E. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.
- F. Air System Piping Gage: Include retard feature and "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

## 2.11 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
- B. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: Polished chrome-plated finish with set-screws.
- C. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
- D. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: Chrome-plated finish with set-screw.
- E. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: Polished chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge and set-screw.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: Chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge, set-screw.
- G. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- H. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## 2.12 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- F. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, standard weight, zinc coated, plain ends.
- G. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set-screws.

## 2.13 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Calpico, Inc.
  - 3. Metraflex, Inc.
  - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel, plastic, or stainless steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.14 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, posthardening and volume adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping in Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping."
- B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping.
- C. Install shutoff valve, check valve, pressure gage, and drain at connection to water service.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements for installation of sprinkler piping in NFPA 13.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.

- I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- J. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- K. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- L. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.
- M. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- N. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on sprinkler piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Division 21 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Division 21 Section "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Twist-Locked Joints: Insert plain end of steel pipe into plain-end-pipe fitting. Rotate retainer lugs one-quarter turn or tighten retainer pin.
- I. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join lightwall steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- J. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- K. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- L. Steel-Piping, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join Schedule 5 steel pipe and steel pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- M. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.4 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. General Requirements: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Alarm Valves: Include bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

### 3.5 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

### 3.6 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- B. Escutcheons for New Piping:
  - 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
  - 2. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 3. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 4. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
  - 5. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass or stamped steel with set-screw.
  - 6. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

### 3.7 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
- F. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for joint sealants in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- G. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for joint sealants in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- H. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals.



- I. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
- J. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
  - 1. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Galvanized-steel pipe.
  - 2. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Galvanized-steel pipe.
    - a. Extend sleeves 2 inches above finished floor level.
    - b. For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Comply with requirements for flashing in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Gypsum-Board Partitions:
    - a. Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
    - c. Exception: Sleeves are not required for water-supply tubes and waste pipes for individual plumbing fixtures if escutcheons will cover openings.
  - 4. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Roof Slabs: Galvanized-steel pipe.
  - 5. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
    - a. Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Cast-iron wall-pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
    - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
  - 6. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Interior Concrete Walls:
    - a. Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestop materials and installations in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.8 SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.9 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
  - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
  - 5. Start and run excess-pressure pumps.
  - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
  - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
  - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.
- C. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Remove and replace sprinklers with paint other than factory finish.

### 3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with threaded ends; cast-iron threaded fittings; and threaded or grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Standard-weight galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 3. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; uncoated, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
  - 4. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with plain ends; galvanized, plain-end-pipe fittings; and twist-locked joints.
  - 5. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 6. Standard-weight, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 7. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 2. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 3. Standard-weight or Schedule 30, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
  - 4. Thinwall black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 5. Thinwall black-steel pipe with plain ends; welding fittings; and welded joints.

### 3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
  - 1. All Gypboard Ceilings and/or Soffits: Concealed head sprinklers - custom color by Architect.
  - 2. Auditorium 'House' ceiling system: Concealed head sprinklers - custom color by Architect.
  - 3. Locate sprinkler heads per detail on Drawings.
  - 4. Stage: provide manufacturer provided cage around each sprinkler head.
  - 5. Stage Craft: provide manufacturer provided cage around each sprinkler head.
  - 6. Gyms: provide manufacturer provided cage around each sprinkler head.
  - 7. Wrestling Room: provide manufacturer provided cage around each sprinkler head.
  - 8. Weight Room: provide manufacturer provided cage around each sprinkler head.
  - 9. Locker Rooms: provide manufacturer provided cage around each sprinkler head.
  - 10. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
  - 11. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Pendent sprinklers.
  - 12. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
  - 13. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Pendent, dry sprinklers.
  - 14. Deluge-Sprinkler Systems: pendent, open sprinklers.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
  - 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with custom color plate.
  - 2. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with chrome escutcheon.

3. Upright, Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

**END OF SECTION 211313**



## SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Transition fittings.
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 5. Sleeves.
  - 6. Escutcheons.
  - 7. Grout.
  - 8. Plumbing demolition.
  - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 10. Painting and finishing.
  - 11. Concrete bases.
  - 12. Supports and anchorages.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
  - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  - 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  - 4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Transition fittings.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Escutcheons.

- B. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for plumbing items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
  - 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

## 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated (The); Pipe Products Div.
    - d. JCM Industries.
    - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
    - f. Viking Johnson.
  - 2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
  - 3. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
  - 4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
    - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.
- E. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Fernco, Inc.
    - c. Mission Rubber Company.
    - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Eclipse, Inc.
    - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
    - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Perfection Corp.
    - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

## 2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Plastic, carbon steel, or stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.



## 2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

## 2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - 1. New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
    - i. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
    - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
      - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
  - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- R. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- S. Coordinate location of vents through roof with rooftop mounted air units fresh air intakes.
- T. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
  - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
  - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
  - 6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
  - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  - 5. Install shutoff valves on all equipment and piping branch lines that serve more than four pieces of equipment.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.
- E. Install floor drains for all equipment requiring condensate or indirect waste removal. Coordinate requirements with HVAC contractor and with Owner-furnished equipment.

### 3.5 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.6 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

### END OF SECTION 220500

## **SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### **1.3 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in plumbing equipment schedules or Sections.
- B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

#### **2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS**

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

#### **2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

#### 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
  - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

#### 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

#### END OF SECTION 220513

## **SECTION 220516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
  - 2. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
  - 3. Rubber packless expansion joints.
  - 4. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
  - 5. Pipe loops and swing connections.
  - 6. Alignment guides and anchors.

#### **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
  - 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
  - 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
  - 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.
- E. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
    - b. Flexicraft Industries.
    - c. Flex Pression Ltd.

- d. Metraflex, Inc.
- e. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
- f. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
- 3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
- 4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
  - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
  - b. Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
- 5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
  - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
  - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
- 6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
  - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F (2250 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
  - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- 7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
  - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
  - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- 8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
  - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
  - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

**B. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:**

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Adasco Manufacturing LLC.
  - b. American BOA, Inc.
  - c. Badger Industries, Inc.
  - d. Expansion Joint Systems, Inc.
  - e. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
  - f. Flexicraft Industries.
  - g. Flex Pression Ltd.
  - h. Flex-Weld, Inc.
  - i. Flo Fab inc.
  - j. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
  - k. Metraflex, Inc.
  - l. Proco Products, Inc.
  - m. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
  - n. Tozen Corporation.
  - o. Unaflex.
  - p. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
  - q. Universal Metal Hose; a subsidiary of Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
  - r. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
  - s. WahlcoMetroflex.
  - t. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- 3. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
- 4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig unless otherwise indicated.
- 5. Configuration: Single joint with base and double joint with base class(es) unless otherwise indicated.
- 6. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single- or multi-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.
  - a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint.
  - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint.



- c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.

C. Rubber Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.; a div. of Vibration Isolation Products of Texas, Inc.
  - b. Mason Industries, Inc.; Mercer Rubber Co.
  - c. Metraflex, Inc.
  - d. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standards: ASTM F 1123 and FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
3. Material: Fabric-reinforced rubber complying with FSA-NMEJ-703.
4. Arch Type: multiple arches with external control rods.
5. Spherical Type: multiple spheres with external control rods.
6. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
7. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F.
8. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F.
9. Material for Water: EPDM.
10. End Connections: Full-faced, integral steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

## 2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

A. Alignment Guides:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Adscos Manufacturing LLC.
  - b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
  - c. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
  - d. Flexicraft Industries.
  - e. Flex-Weld, Inc.
  - f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
  - g. Metraflex, Inc.
  - h. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
  - i. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
  - j. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
  - k. Pre-approved equal.
2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
  - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
  - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
  - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- C. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-NMEJ-702.

- D. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping

### 3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

### 3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one or two guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
  - 1. Anchor Attachment to Black-Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 2. Anchor Attachment to Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 42, riser clamp welded to anchor.
  - 3. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
  - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

### END OF SECTION 220516

## **SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 4. Grout.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 07 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control reports.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SLEEVES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anticorrosion coated or galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

#### **2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company
  - 4. Metraflex Company (The)
  - 5. Proco Products, Inc
- B. Description:
  - 1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
  - 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.

4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B 633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc
  2. CALPICO, Inc
  3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company
  4. Metraflex Company (The)
  5. Proco Products, Inc
- B. Description:
  1. Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
  2. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Fasten sleeves securely in floors and walls so that they will not become displaced when concrete is poured or when other construction is built around them. Take precautions to prevent concrete, plaster or other materials from being forced into space between pipe and sleeve during construction
- C. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- D. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- E. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide minimum 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- F. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Use grout to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves or sleeve-seal fittings.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves or sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, or sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, or sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, or sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system, or sleeve-seal fittings.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves or sleeve-seal fittings.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - 5. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

**END OF SECTION 220517**



## **SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company
  - 2. Dearborn Brass
  - 3. Keeney Manufacturing Company (The)
  - 4. Mid-America Fittings, Inc.
  - 5. ProFlo; a Ferguson Enterprises, Inc. brand

#### **2.2 ESCUTCHEONS**

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Stainless-Steel Type: With polished stainless-steel finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- D. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel or brass with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

#### **2.3 FLOOR PLATES**

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install escutcheons for exposed piping penetrations of finished walls, ceilings, and floors.

- B. Install escutcheons on bare piping to be compatible with pipe material:
  - 1. Copper Piping: Brass
  - 2. Ferrous Piping: Steel.
  - 3. Plastic Piping: Steel.
  - 4. Stainless Steel Piping: Stainless Steel.
  
- C. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece or split-plate, with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece or split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece or split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece or split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  
- D. Install floor plates for exposed piping penetrations of floors in finished areas with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: One-piece, floor plate.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

### END OF SECTION 220518



## **SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
  - 2. Filled-system thermometers.
  - 3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
  - 4. Light-activated thermometers.
  - 5. Thermowells.
  - 6. Dial-type pressure gages.
  - 7. Gage attachments.
  - 8. Test plugs.
  - 9. Test-plug kits.
  - 10. Sight flow indicators.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
  - 2. Division 21 fire-suppression piping Sections for fire-protection pressure gages.
  - 3. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for domestic water meters and combined domestic and fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
  - 4. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters inside the building.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Terrice, H. O. Co.
  - 2. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - 4. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.

- H. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ashcroft Inc.
    - b. Marsh Bellofram.
    - c. Miljoco Corporation.
    - d. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    - e. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    - f. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    - g. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    - h. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 6-inch nominal diameter.
  - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - 5. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
  - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - 8. Window: Glass.
  - 9. Ring: Stainless steel.
  - 10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - 11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - 12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ashcroft Inc.
    - b. Miljoco Corporation.
    - c. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 3. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
  - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
  - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - 8. Window: Glass.
  - 9. Ring: Metal or plastic.
  - 10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - 11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - 12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    - b. Ashcroft Inc.
    - c. Marsh Bellofram.
    - d. Miljoco Corporation.

- e. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
  - f. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
  - g. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - h. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - i. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
  - j. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
  - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
  - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - 8. Window: Glass.
  - 9. Ring: Stainless steel.
  - 10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - 11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - 12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    - b. Ashcroft Inc.
    - c. Miljoco Corporation.
    - d. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    - e. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    - f. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 3. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
  - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
  - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
  - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  - 8. Window: Glass.
  - 9. Ring: Metal or plastic.
  - 10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, threaded, bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - 11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
    - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
  - 12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.3 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
  - 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
  - 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES or CSA.
  - 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
  - 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
  - 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  - 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  - 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
  - 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Terice, H. O. Co.
    - b. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  3. Case: Liquid-filled, sealed, open-front, pressure relief, solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
  4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
  8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  9. Window: Glass.
  10. Ring: Brass or stainless steel.
  11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    - b. Ashcroft Inc.
    - c. Flo Fab Inc.
    - d. Marsh Bellofram.
    - e. Miljoco Corporation.
    - f. Noshok.
    - g. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    - h. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    - i. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    - j. Terice, H. O. Co.
    - k. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    - l. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
    - m. Winters Instruments - U.S.
    - n. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  3. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
  4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
  8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
  9. Window: Glass.
  10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.
- C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    - b. Ashcroft Inc.
    - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
    - d. Flo Fab Inc.
    - e. Marsh Bellofram.
    - f. Miljoco Corporation.
    - g. Noshok.
    - h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    - i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
    - j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
    - k. Terice, H. O. Co.
    - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
    - n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
    - o. Winters Instruments - U.S.
    - p. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.100.

3. Case: Liquid-filled, sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
  - b. Ashcroft Inc.
  - c. Miljoco Corporation.
  - d. Noshok.
  - e. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
  - f. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
  - g. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
  - h. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - i. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - j. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
  - k. Winters Instruments - U.S.
  - l. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston or porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.6 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Flow Design, Inc.
  2. Miljoco Corporation.
  3. National Meter, Inc.
  4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
  5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  9. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

## 2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Flow Design, Inc.
  - 2. Miljoco Corporation.
  - 3. National Meter, Inc.
  - 4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
  - 5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 6. Terice, H. O. Co.
  - 7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - 9. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Furnish one test-plug kit containing two thermometers, one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

## 2.8 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Archon Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
  - 3. Emerson Process Management; Brooks Instrument.
  - 4. Ernst Co., John C., Inc.
  - 5. Ernst Flow Industries.
  - 6. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc. - USA; KOBOLD Messring GmbH.
  - 7. OPW Engineered Systems; a Dover company.
  - 8. Penberthy; A Brand of Tyco Valves & Controls - Prophetstown.
  - 9. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
- C. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- D. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- E. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.
- F. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
- G. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid and one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- K. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
  - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
  - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
  - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
- L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
  - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal- or plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal- or plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal or plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.

3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be one of the following:

1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
2. Direct-mounted, metal or plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

### 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.

B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.

### 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be one of the following:

1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:

1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be one of the following:

1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

### 3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi.

**END OF SECTION 220519**



## **SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bronze angle valves.
  - 2. Bronze ball valves.
  - 3. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
  - 4. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
  - 5. Bronze swing check valves.
  - 6. Iron swing check valves.
  - 7. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
  - 8. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
  - 9. Iron, center-guided check valves.
  - 10. Bronze gate valves.
  - 11. Bronze globe valves.
  - 12. Iron globe valves.
  - 13. Polypropylene valves.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
  - 3. Division 33 water distribution piping Sections for general-duty and specialty valves for site construction piping.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
  - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
  - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
  - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
  - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
  - 5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
  - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
  - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
  - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
  - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
  - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### 2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

### A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. Body Design: One piece.
  - d. Body Material: Bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - g. Stem: Bronze.
  - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - i. Port: Reduced.

## 2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

### A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - f. DeZurik Water Controls.
  - g. Flo Fab Inc.
  - h. Hammond Valve.
  - i. Kitz Corporation.
  - j. Legend Valve.
  - k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - l. NIBCO INC.
  - m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
  - n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
  - p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

## 2.5 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

### A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
  - c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - d. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
- c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
- d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
- e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
- f. Seal: EPDM.

## 2.6 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - d. Hammond Valve.
    - e. Kitz Corporation.
    - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - g. NIBCO INC.
    - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
    - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

## 2.7 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Trim: Composition.
    - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
    - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
    - i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.8 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

- A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - e. Ends: Flanged.
    - f. Trim: Bronze.
    - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
    - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

## 2.9 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
  - c. Crispin Valve.
  - d. DFT Inc.
  - e. GA Industries, Inc.
  - f. Hammond Valve.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. NIBCO INC.
  - i. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
  - j. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Seat: EPDM.

## 2.10 BRONZE GATE VALVES

- A. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - e. Hammond Valve.
    - f. Kitz Corporation.
    - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - h. NIBCO INC.
    - i. Powell Valves.
    - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.11 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
    - c. NIBCO INC.
    - d. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## 2.12 IRON GLOBE VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Powell Valves.
  - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Flanged.
  - e. Trim: Bronze.
  - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
  - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
  - 3. Throttling Service: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
  - 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.
    - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, resilient-seat check valves.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  - 7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

### 3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
  - 1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends. Solder joint ball valves allowed up to NPS 3.
  - 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
  - 3. Ball Valves: One piece, reduced port, bronze with bronze trim.
  - 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
  - 5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, RS.
  - 6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  - 1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
  - 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
  - 3. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
  - 4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
  - 5. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
  - 6. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
  - 7. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, resilient seat.
  - 8. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

### END OF SECTION 220523





## **SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for plumbing system piping and equipment:
  - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
  - 4. Metal framing systems.
  - 5. Fiberglass strut systems.
  - 6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 7. Fastener systems.
  - 8. Pipe stands.
  - 9. Pipe positioning systems.
  - 10. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
  - 2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping.
  - 3. Division 22 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
  - 4. Division 22 Section "Vibration for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.
- B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
  - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
  - 4. Powder-actuated fastener systems.
  - 5. Pipe positioning systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
  - 2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - 3. Fiberglass strut systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - 4. Pipe stands. Include Product Data for components.
  - 5. Equipment supports.

- C. Welding certificates.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code—Steel;" AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code—Reinforcing Steel;" and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code—Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code—Aluminum."
  - 3. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code—Reinforcing Steel."
  - 4. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. AAA Technology & Specialties Co., Inc.
  - 2. Bergen-Power Pipe Supports.
  - 3. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  - 4. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  - 5. Empire Industries, Inc.
  - 6. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
  - 7. Globe Pipe Hanger Products, Inc.
  - 8. Grinnell Corp.
  - 9. GS Metals Corp.
  - 10. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  - 11. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 12. PHS Industries, Inc.
  - 13. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  - 14. Tolco Inc.
  - 15. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
- E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

### 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.

2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; ERISTRUT Div.
3. GS Metals Corp.
4. Power-Strut Div.; Tyco International, Ltd.
5. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
6. Tolco Inc.
7. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
8. Pre-approved equal.

C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.

D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

## 2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Description: 100-psig-minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
3. PHS Industries, Inc.
4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
5. Rilco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
7. Pre-approved equal.

C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.

D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.

E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated or stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
  - c. Hilti, Inc.
  - d. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
  - e. MKT Fastening, LLC.
  - f. Powers Fasteners.
  - g. Pre-approved equal.

## 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.

2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
  5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
  10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:

- a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
  - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
  - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- O. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
  - 2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- F. Pipe Positioning System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for plumbing fixtures.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- N. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
  5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
  6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
  7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION 220529**



## **SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

#### **1.4 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS**

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch; stainless steel, 0.025-inch; aluminum, 0.032-inch; or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter Color: White.
  - 3. Background Color: Black.
  - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

- 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (.
  - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
  - D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

## 2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch; stainless steel, 0.025-inch; aluminum, 0.032-inch; or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
  - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.
  - 2. Provide framed ready-to-hang water valve shut-off location directory.

## 2.5 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire or reinforced grommet and wire or string.
  - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

### 3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 2 inches, round.
    - b. Hot Water: 2 inches, round.
  - 2. Valve-Tag Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Natural or green.
    - b. Hot Water: Natural or green.
  - 3. Letter Color:
    - a. Cold Water: Black or white.
    - b. Hot Water: Black or white.

### 3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

**END OF SECTION 220553**

## **SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties.
  - 3. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  - 4. Detail application of field-applied jackets and fitting covers.
- C. LEED Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that product complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

#### **1.6 SCHEDULING**

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on piping segments that have satisfactory test results.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Plumbing Piping Insulation Schedule" for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
    - b. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
    - c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL.
- D. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.

### 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
    - c. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.

### 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; CP-50 AHV2.

- b. Foster Brand; 30-36.
  - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  - d. Pre-approved equal.
- 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
- 5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
  - 1. Joint Sealants for Flexible Elastomeric Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; CP-76.
    - b. Foster Brand; 30-45.
    - c. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
  - 5. Color: White or gray.
  - 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  - 4. Color: White.
  - 5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
    - e. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  - 3. Color: White.
  - 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

## 2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI; 428 AWF ASJ.

- b. Avery Dennison Corporation; Fasson 0836.
  - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
  - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Width: 3 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. ABI; 370 White PVC tape.
  - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
  - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
  - d. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Width: 2 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.9 SECUREMENTS

A. Staples for Hot Service Only: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

## 2.10 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
  - b. Plumberex.
  - c. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

## 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.



- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, no penetrations of the insulation shall occur at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections. Seal joints and seams with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  - 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  - 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  - 8. For services, except for flexible elastomeric, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  - 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
  - 1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or

- union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Finish exposed surfaces with a PVC jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
  4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
  3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

**END OF SECTION 220719**



## **SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
  - 2. Encasement for piping.
  - 3. Specialty valves.
  - 4. Flexible connectors.
  - 5. Escutcheons.
  - 6. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - 7. Wall penetration systems.
- B. Related Section:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.
- C. Reference Documents:
  - 1. ASTM F 2389-06 - Standard Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems.
  - 2. CSA B137.11 - Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications.
  - 3. NSF/ANSI 14 – Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials.
  - 4. NSF/ANSI 61 – Drinking Water Systems Components – Health Effects.
- D. Definitions:
  - 1. Definitions shall be in accordance with local plumbing codes and ASTM F 2389.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following products:
  - 1. Specialty valves.
  - 2. Transition fittings.
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Flexible connectors.
  - 5. Backflow preventers and vacuum breakers.
  - 6. Escutcheons.
  - 7. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
  - 8. Water penetration systems.
  - 9. Piping.
- B. Water Samples: Specified in "Cleaning" Article.
- C. Coordination Drawings: For piping in equipment rooms and other congested areas, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Fire-suppression-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic water piping.
  - 3. Compressed air piping.
  - 4. HVAC hydronic piping.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

- B. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.
- C. Material shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14, NSF 61, and ASTM F 2389 or CSA B137.11.
- D. Material shall comply with manufacturers specifications.
- E. Special Engineered products shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, or Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, or Owner's written permission.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

#### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
  1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
  2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
  3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
  4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
  5. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
      - 2) NIBCO INC.
      - 3) Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
      - 4) Pre-approved equal.
    - b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
    - c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
  6. Copper-Tube Extruded-Tee Connections:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) T-DRILL Industries Inc.
      - 2) Pre-approved equal.
    - b. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
  7. Grooved-Joint Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Anvil International.
      - 2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
      - 3) Victaulic Company.
      - 4) Pre-approved equal.
    - b. Copper Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
    - c. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.

1. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

## 2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  1. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
  2. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
    - a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
  1. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
    - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
  2. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
    - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

## 2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

## 2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty metal valves.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves, drain valves, backflow preventers, and vacuum breakers.

## 2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
  1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
  2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
  3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
    - b. Dresser, Inc.; Dresser Piping Specialties.

- c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
- d. JCM Industries.
- e. Romac Industries, Inc.
- f. Smith-Blair, Inc; a Sensus company.
- g. Viking Johnson; c/o Mueller Co.
- h. Pre-approved equal.

## 2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
    - d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
    - g. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F.
    - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
    - e. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
    - c. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Galvanized-steel coupling.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
    - c. End Connections: Female threaded.
    - d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic.
- F. Dielectric Nipples:



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
  - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
  - d. Pre-approved equal.
2. Description:
  - a. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
  - c. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
  - d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## 2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
  2. Flexicraft Industries.
  3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
  4. Flex-Weld, Inc.
  5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
  6. Mercer Rubber Co.
  7. Metraflex, Inc.
  8. Proco Products, Inc.
  9. Tozen Corporation.
  10. Unaflex, Inc.
  11. Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company.
  12. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
  1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  2. End Connections NPS 2) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
  3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
  1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
  3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

## 2.10 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
- B. One Piece, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with setscrews.
- C. One Piece, Deep Pattern: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
- D. One Piece, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with setscrew.
- E. Split Casting, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- F. Split Plate, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge, setscrew.
- G. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- H. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## 2.11 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Fabricated of cast iron, and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

- C. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- F. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc-coated, with plain ends.
- G. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.12 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Calpico, Inc.
  - 3. Metraflex, Inc.
  - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, used to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or stainless steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.13 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.

- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.
- H. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- M. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
- N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- O. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- Q. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
- T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.
- U. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- F. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2104. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- G. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll groove end of tube. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for roll-grooved joints.

- H. Ductile-Iron-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join ductile-iron pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe, cut-grooved joints.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- J. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

#### 3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
  - 1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
  - 2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.
- D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.
- E. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

#### 3.5 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

#### 3.6 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

#### 3.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump.
- B. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.

#### 3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.

2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
  - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
  - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
  - c. Longer Than 100 Feet If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

F. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: 32 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

G. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches

H. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.9 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:

1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections for connection sizes.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### 3.10 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

B. Escutcheons for New Piping:

1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
2. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
4. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
5. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass.

6. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

3.11 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
- F. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
- G. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
- H. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals specified in this Section.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
- J. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
  - 1. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Molded PE, molded PVC, or steel pipe.
  - 2. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Steel pipe or stack sleeve fittings.
    - a. Extend sleeves 2 inches above finished floor level.
    - b. For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
  - 3. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Roof Slabs: Molded PE, molded PVC, or steel pipe.
  - 4. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
    - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Cast-iron wall pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
    - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
    - d. Do not use sleeves when wall penetration systems are used.
  - 5. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Interior Concrete Walls:
    - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestop materials and installations.

3.12 SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.13 WALL PENETRATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall penetration systems in new, exterior concrete walls.
- B. Assemble wall penetration system components with sleeve pipe. Install so that end of sleeve pipe and face of housing are flush with wall. Adjust locking devices to secure sleeve pipe in housing.

### 3.14 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Piping Inspections:
  - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
    - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
    - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
  - 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Piping Tests:
  - 1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
  - 2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.16 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
  - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
    - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
  - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
  - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.

7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.17 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable and non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
  1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
      - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
      - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
    - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
    - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
  1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
  2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
    - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
    - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.18 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K or ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:
  1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
  2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
  2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- G. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
  1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
  2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.



- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.

### 3.19 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated memory-stop balancing valves.
  - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

**END OF SECTION 221116**



## **SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
  - 1. Vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Backflow preventers.
  - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 4. Balancing valves.
  - 5. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
  - 6. Strainers.
  - 7. Outlet boxes.
  - 8. Hose bibbs.
  - 9. Wall hydrants.
  - 10. Drain valves.
  - 11. Water hammer arresters.
  - 12. Air vents.
  - 13. Trap-seal primer valves.
  - 14. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
  - 3. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
  - 4. Division 22 Section "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" for thermostatic mixing valves for sitz baths, thermostatic mixing-valve assemblies for hydrotherapy equipment, and outlet boxes for dialysis equipment.
  - 5. Division 22 Section "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
  - 6. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

#### **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. NSF Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
  - 2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ames Co.
    - b. Cash Acme.
    - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - d. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
    - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
    - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
    - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
    - i. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
  3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
  4. Body: Bronze.
  5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
  6. Finish: Rough bronze or chrome plated where in public view.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
    - b. Cash Acme.
    - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - d. Legend Valve.
    - e. MIFAB, Inc.
    - f. Prier Products, Inc.
    - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
    - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
    - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
    - k. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
  3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
  4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated or rough bronze where in public view.
- C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ames Co.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
    - d. Flomatic Corporation.
    - e. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
    - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
    - h. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1020.
  3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
  5. Accessories:
    - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.
- D. Laboratory-Faucet Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
    - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
    - e. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Standard: ASSE 1035.
  3. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8 matching faucet size.

4. Body: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.

E. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - c. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1056.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Accessories:
  - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

## 2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
  - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1012.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
6. Finish: Rough bronze.

B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
  - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through; vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet; or vertical where space constraints require, flow.
8. Accessories:
  - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

C. Double-Check Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
  - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
8. Accessories:

- a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Beverage-Dispensing-Equipment Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1022.
  - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - 4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
  - 5. Body: Stainless steel.
  - 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- E. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
    - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
    - e. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1024.
  - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - 4. Body: Bronze with union inlet.
- F. Carbonated-Beverage-Dispenser, Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cash Acme.
    - b. Lancer Corporation.
    - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1032.
  - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - 4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
  - 5. Body: Stainless steel.
  - 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- G. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
    - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
    - e. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1048 and FMG approved or UL listed.
  - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
  - 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
  - 5. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
  - 6. End Connections: Flanged.
  - 7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through; vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet; or vertical flow where space constraints require.
  - 8. Accessories:
    - a. Valves: Outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
    - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- H. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1052.

3. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
4. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

I. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
  - c. Flomatic Corporation.
  - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  - f. Pre-approved equal.
2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

## 2.3 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div. for 4" valves and larger, no exceptions allowed.
  - b. Wilkins, Cla-Val, Febco, or Conbraco for valves smaller than 4", no other manufacturer's allowed.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

B. Water Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CLA-VAL Automatic Control Valves.
  - b. Flomatic Corporation.
  - c. OCV Control Valves.
  - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Ames Fluid Control Systems.
  - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Watts ACV.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
  - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Description: Pilot-operation, diaphragm-type, single-seated main water control valve.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
4. Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
  - a. Pattern: Angle- or globe-valve design.
  - b. Trim: Stainless steel.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

## 2.4 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - b. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
  - d. TAC Americas.
  - e. Taco, Inc.
  - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory setting indicator.
3. Body: Brass or bronze.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - b. Flo Fab Inc.
  - c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. TAC Americas.
  - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2.

C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

D. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
  - i. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
5. Body: Copper alloy.
6. Port: Standard or full port.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

## 2.5 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
  - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
  - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
  - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.
6. Drain: Pipe plug.

## 2.6 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
  - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - c. IPS Corporation.
  - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
  - e. Oatey.
  - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
  - g. Symmons Industries, Inc.
  - h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - i. Whitehall Manufacturing; a div. of Acorn Engineering Company.
  - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - k. Pre-approved equal.
2. Mounting: Recessed.



3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Combination, valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water, valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
5. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
6. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
7. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
8. Drain Hose: One 48-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
  - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - c. IPS Corporation.
  - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
  - e. Oatey.
  - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
  - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
5. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

## 2.7 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze or chrome or nickel plated.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Operating key.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## 2.8 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Prier Products, Inc.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - j. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.

9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

B. Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
  - b. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
  - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
  - d. Prier Products, Inc.
  - e. Smith, Jay. R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - i. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
3. Type: Freeze-resistant, automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
4. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
6. Operation: Loose key.
7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
8. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

## 2.9 POST HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze, Draining-Type Post Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. MIFAB, Inc.
  - b. Prier Products, Inc.
  - c. Simmons Manufacturing Co.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - j. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
3. Type: Nonfreeze, exposed-outlet post hydrant.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
6. Casing: Bronze with casing guard.
7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
8. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
9. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
10. Vacuum Breaker: Nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
11. Operating Key(s): Two with each loose-key-operation wall hydrant.

## 2.10 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.

9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

## 2.11 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

### A. Water Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. PPP Inc.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - j. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Metal bellows or copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## 2.12 AIR VENTS

### A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

### B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Stainless steel.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig minimum pressure rating.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
  3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
  4. Install backflow preventer between 12" above floor and 60" above floor so it is easily accessible without the use of a ladder.
- C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install water control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

- E. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- F. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  - 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
  - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- G. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- H. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Install hose stations with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
  - 1. Install shutoff valve on outlet if specified.
  - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- J. Install ground hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set ground hydrants with box flush with grade.
- K. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. of concrete block at grade.
- L. Install nonfreeze, nondraining-type post hydrants set in concrete or pavement.
- M. Install freeze-resistant yard hydrants with riser pipe set in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.
- N. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- O. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
  - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 4. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
  - 5. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
  - 6. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
  - 7. Reduced-pressure-detector, fire-protection backflow-preventer assemblies.
  - 8. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
  - 9. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 10. Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 11. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
  - 12. Manifold, thermostatic, water-mixing-valve assemblies.
  - 13. Photographic-process, thermostatic, water-mixing-valve assemblies.
  - 14. Primary water tempering valves.
  - 15. Outlet boxes.
  - 16. Hose stations.

- 17. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
- 18. Trap-seal primer systems.

- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

#### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

**END OF SECTION 221119**



## **SECTION 221123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

#### **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

#### **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
  - 2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
  - 3. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, U.S.A.
  - 4. Grundfos
  - 5. Wilo
  - 6. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted horizontal.

- C. Pump Construction:
  - 1. Casing: Radially split with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
  - 2. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
  - 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft with deflector, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
  - 4. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
  - 5. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
  - 6. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
- D. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently or rigidly mounted to pump casing.
- E. Characteristics:
  - 1. Casing Material: Bronze or cast iron.
  - 2. Impeller Material: ASTM B 584, cast bronze or stainless steel.
  - 3. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.
  - 4. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.
  - 5. Pump Control: Thermostat.

## 2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.

## 2.3 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

### 3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.
- D. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers or spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of size required to support pump weight.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- E. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.



- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
  - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
    - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
    - b. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
  - 2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
  - 3. Install pressure gage and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tapings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with Division 26 Sections for electrical connections, and wiring methods.
- E. Connect thermostats to pumps that they control.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
  - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
  - 4. Set thermostats for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
  - 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
    - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
  - 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
  - 7. Start motor.
  - 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
  - 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
  - 10. Adjust timer settings.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

## END OF SECTION 221123



## **SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following soil and waste, sanitary drainage and vent piping inside the building:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Special pipe fittings.

#### **1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; and "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
  - 1. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- B. Hubless Cast-Iron Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
  - 1. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
    - a. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - b. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Special pipe fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure ratings may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Aboveground, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.

#### **3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION**

- A. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- B. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.

- C. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- D. Install wall penetration system at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight. Wall penetration systems are specified in Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- E. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- F. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- G. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- H. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- I. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- J. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- B. Cast-Iron, Soil-Piping Joints: Make joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Gasketed Joints: Make with rubber gasket matching class of pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Hubless Joints: Make with rubber gasket and sleeve or clamp.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Section "Hangers and Supports." Install the following:
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Section "Hangers and Supports."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.

G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

H. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect soil and waste piping to existing sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- B. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Refer to Section "Plumbing Fixtures."
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Refer to Section "Plumbing Specialties."
  - 4. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 2. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

## END OF SECTION 221316



## SECTION 221319 - SANITARY AND WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following drainage piping specialties:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Floor drains.
  - 3. Miscellaneous drainage piping specialties.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for grease interceptors.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CLEANOUTS

- A. Exposed Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a product by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - 4. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
  - 5. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
  - 6. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
  - 7. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
  - 8. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- B. Cast-Iron Floor Cleanouts:
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a product by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. Oatey.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
    - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - 4. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for heavy-duty, adjustable housing cleanout.
  - 5. Size: Same as connected branch.
  - 6. Type: Heavy-duty, adjustable housing.
  - 7. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
  - 8. Clamping Device: Required.
  - 9. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.

10. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
11. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
12. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
13. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
14. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
15. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a product by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
4. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
5. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
6. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
7. Closure: Countersunk, brass plug.
8. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
9. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
10. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

## 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
3. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a product by one of the following:
  - a. Commercial Enameling Co.
  - b. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Prier Products, Inc.
  - e. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - f. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - g. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
4. Floor drains shall be as scheduled on the drawings.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

B. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
  - a. NPS 2: 4-inch-minimum water seal.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch-minimum water seal.

C. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.



2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

D. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 90 degrees.
  3. Locate at minimum intervals per local code requirements.
  4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
  3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch above floor.
- G. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- H. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- I. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

**END OF SECTION 221319**

## **SECTION 221413 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following storm drainage piping inside the building:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Special pipe fittings.
  - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Sump Pumps."

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- C. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- D. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- E. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working-pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.
  - 2. Storm Drainage, Force-Main Piping: 150 psig.

#### **1.5 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. LEED Submittal:
  - 1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Controlled-Flow Storm Drainage System: Include calculations, plans, and details.
- D. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

#### **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

### 2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### 2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301; manufactured by AB&I, Charlotte or Tyler.
- B. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
  - 1. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) ANACO.
      - 2) Mission Rubber Co.
      - 3) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
      - 4) Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) ANACO/Husky SD 4000.
      - 2) Clamp-All Corp.-125.
      - 3) Pre-approved equal.
  - 3. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) MG Piping Products Co.
      - 2) Pre-approved equal.

### 2.5 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A or B, Standard Weight or Schedule 40, galvanized. Include ends matching joining method.
- B. Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized, threaded, cast-iron drainage pattern.
- C. Pressure Fittings:
  - 1. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
  - 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
  - 3. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, standard pattern.
  - 4. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
  - 5. Cast-Iron, Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125, galvanized.
- D. Grooved-Joint Systems:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Anvil International.
  - b. Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.
  - c. Victaulic Co. of America.
  - d. Ward Manufacturing, Inc.
  - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, galvanized, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106, galvanized-steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, galvanized, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
3. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.6 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
  1. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast-copper or ASME B16.29, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, drawn temper.
  1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  2. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
  3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- C. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
  1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.

## 2.7 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. Solvent Cement and Adhesive Primer:
  1. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.8 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Flexible, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - b. Fernco, Inc.
    - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
    - d. Mission Rubber Co.
    - e. NDS, Inc.
    - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
    - g. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Sleeve Materials:
    - a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - b. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - c. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- B. Expansion Joints: Two or three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve(s) with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
    - b. Romac Industries, Inc.
    - c. Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.

- d. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Wall-Penetration Fittings: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and flexing sections for up to 20-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. SIGMA Corp.
    - b. Pre-approved equal.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

#### 3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and coupled joints.
- C. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- D. Aboveground storm drainage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- E. Aboveground storm drainage force mains NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 6 shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
  - 2. Grooved-end steel pipe, grooved-joint system fittings and couplings, and grooved joints.

#### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Storm sewer and drainage piping outside the building are specified in Division 33 Section "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- C. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers. Cleanouts are specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping.
- E. Install underground, steel, force-main piping. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- F. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- G. Install wall-penetration fitting system at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.
- H. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

- I. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- J. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- K. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Storm Drain: 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
- L. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- M. Install engineered controlled-flow storm drainage piping in locations indicated.
- N. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- O. Install PVC storm drainage piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- P. Install underground ABS and PVC storm drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- Q. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- C. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Calked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
- D. Hubless Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints: Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- E. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Grooved Joints: Cut groove ends of pipe and assemble grooved ends of pipes, grooved-end fittings, and grooved-end-piping couplings according to AWWA C606.
- G. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

#### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sump pump discharge.
  - 1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
  - 2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sump pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to backflow.

1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
3. Backwater valve are specified in Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
  1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
  6. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
  8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- I. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- K. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.



C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.

- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
1. Storm Sewer: To exterior force main or storm manhole.
  2. Sump Pumps: To sump pump discharge.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
  2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### END OF SECTION 221413



## **SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following storm drainage piping specialties:
  - 1. Backwater valves.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
  - 4. Roof drains.
  - 5. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
  - 6. Flashing materials.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for backwater valves, floor drains, trench drains and channel drainage systems connected to sanitary sewer and grease interceptors.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- G. PUR: Polyurethane plastic.
- H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

#### **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 BACKWATER VALVES**

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.

- b. MIFAB, Inc.
- c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
- d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
- e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
- f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
- 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 4. Body: Cast iron.
- 5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
- 6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
- 7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed or open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
- 8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

## 2.2 CLEANOUTS

### A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch or hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

### B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. Oatey.
  - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
  - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - i. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule; heavy-duty, adjustable housing; or threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
- 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
- 4. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
- 5. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
- 6. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket or brass plug with tapered threads.
- 7. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads, set-screws or other device.
- 8. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
- 9. Frame and Cover Shape: Round or square in tiled areas.
- 10. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy-Duty in Service, Equipment and Warehouse Areas; Light or Medium Duty.
- 11. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class in Service, Equipment and Warehouse Areas or service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

### C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.

- d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
- e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
- f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
- 4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass or cast-iron plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 7. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with countersunk screw.

## 2.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

- A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
    - b. Hilti.
    - c. 3M, Inc.
    - d. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
  - 3. Size: Same as connected pipe.
  - 4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
  - 5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
  - 6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

## 2.4 ROOF DRAINS

- A. Metal Roof Drains:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. MIFAB, Inc.
    - c. Prier Products, Inc.
    - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
    - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
    - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
    - i. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
  - 3. Pattern: Roof drain.
  - 4. Body Material: Cast iron.
  - 5. Dome Material: Cast iron.
  - 6. See Schedule on Drawings.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Conductor/Downspout Nozzles:
  - 1. Description: Bronze body with threaded inlet and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
  - 2. Size: Same as connected conductor.

## 2.6 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, 12 oz./sq. ft. thickness.
- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.

- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- G. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- D. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- E. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Assemble FRP channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- G. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.
- H. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions. Roofing materials are specified in Division 07.
  - 1. Install roof-drain flashing collar or flange so that there will be no leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 2. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- I. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- J. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- K. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- L. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:

1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
  2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

#### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

**END OF SECTION 221423**





## **SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Commercial, light-duty, storage, electric, domestic-water heaters.
  - 2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Commercial, light-duty, storage, electric, domestic-water heaters.
  - 2. Domestic-water heater accessories.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room drawing or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which the items described in this Section are shown and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

#### **1.6 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
    - b. Faulty operation of controls.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
  - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
    - a. Commercial, Light-Duty, Storage, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
      - 1) Storage Tank: Three years.
      - 2) Controls and Other Components: Two years.
    - b. Expansion Tanks: Five years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- C. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

### 2.2 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Light-Duty, Storage, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
    - b. Bradford White Corporation.
    - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
    - d. State Industries.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 3. Standard: UL 174.
  - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel, vertical arrangement.
    - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
    - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
    - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
    - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
    - g. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in immersion type.
    - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - i. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
    - j. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- B. Capacity and Characteristics:
  - a. Refer to schedule on drawings.

### 2.3 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
    - b. AMTROL, Inc.
    - c. Taco Comfort Solutions.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water expansion tanks from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 3. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
  - 4. Construction:
    - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
    - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
    - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
  - 5. Capacity and Characteristics:
    - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig.

b. Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal. minimum.

- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- C. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

#### 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
  - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
  - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
  - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
  - 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

- G. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of residential, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- H. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.
- I. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.
- J. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water to contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.

### 3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters. Training to be a minimum of one hour(s).

## END OF SECTION 223300

## **SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Faucets for lavatories and sinks.
  - 2. Flushometers.
  - 3. Toilet seats.
  - 4. Protective shielding guards.
  - 5. Fixture supports.
  - 6. Water closets.
  - 7. Urinals.
  - 8. Lavatories.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
- E. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- F. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- D. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- E. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- F. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
  - 1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
  - 2. Plastic Laundry Trays: ANSI Z124.6.
  - 3. Plastic Shower Enclosures: ANSI Z124.2.
  - 4. Plastic Sinks: ANSI Z124.6.

5. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
  6. Slip-Resistant Bathing Surfaces: ASTM F 462.
  7. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.
  8. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
  9. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
  10. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
  11. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
  2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
  3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
  4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
  5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
  6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
  9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
  11. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
  12. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
  2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
  3. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
  4. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
  5. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
  6. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
  7. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
  2. Dishwasher Air-Gap Fittings: ASSE 1021.
  3. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
  4. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
  5. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
  6. Hot-Water Dispensers: ASSE 1023 and UL 499.
  7. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
  8. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
  9. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
  10. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. Lavatory Faucets:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
    - b. Bradley Corporation.
    - c. Chicago Faucets.
    - d. Delta Faucet Company.
    - e. Eljer.
    - f. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    - g. Kohler Co.
    - h. Moen, Inc.
    - i. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
    - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
    - k. Peerless.
  2. Description: See schedule on the drawings.

## 2.2 FLUSHOMETERS

### A. Flushometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Sloan Valve Company.
  - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Commercial Brass Operation.
  - c. TOTO USA, Inc.
2. Description: See schedule on the drawings.

## 2.3 TOILET SEATS

### A. Toilet Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
  - b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
  - c. Centoco Manufacturing Corp.
  - d. Church Seats.
  - e. Eljer.
  - f. Kohler Co.
  - g. Olsonite Corp.
  - h. Sanderson Plumbing Products, Inc.; Beneke Div.
2. Description: Toilet seat for water-closet-type fixture.
  - a. Material: Molded, solid plastic with antimicrobial agent.
  - b. Configuration: Open front without cover.
  - c. Size: Elongated.
  - d. Hinge Type: SS, self-sustaining.
  - e. Class: Heavy-duty commercial.
  - f. Color: White.

## 2.4 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

### A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Engineered Brass Co.
  - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a Subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
  - c. McGuire Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Plumberex Specialty Products Inc.
  - e. TCI Products.
  - f. TRUEBRO, Inc.
  - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

## 2.5 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Josam Company.
2. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

### B. Water-Closet Supports:

1. Description: Combination carrier designed for accessible or standard mounting height of wall-mounting, water-closet-type fixture. Include single or double, vertical or horizontal, hub-and-spigot or hubless waste fitting as required for piping arrangement; faceplates; couplings with gaskets; feet; and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.

### C. Urinal Supports:

1. Description: Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture for wall-mounting, urinal-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.

- D. Lavatory Supports:
  - 1. Description: Type II, lavatory carrier with concealed arms and tie rod for wall-mounting, lavatory-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
  - 2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.

## 2.6 WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
    - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
    - c. Eljer.
    - d. Kohler Co.
    - e. Gerber.
    - f. Sloan.
  - 2. Description: See schedule on the drawings.

## 2.7 URINALS

- A. Urinals:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
    - b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C./Fiat Products.
    - c. Eljer.
    - d. Kohler Co.
    - e. Sloan.
  - 2. Description: See schedule on the drawings.

## 2.8 LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatories:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Standard Companies, Inc.
    - b. Eljer.
    - c. Kohler Co.
  - 2. Description: See schedule on the drawings.
    - a. Drain Piping: NPS 1-1/4 by NPS 1-1/2 chrome-plated, cast-brass P-trap; NPS 1-1/2, 0.045-inch-thick tubular brass waste to wall; and wall escutcheon.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
  - 1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
  - 2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
  - 3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
- E. Install wall-mounting fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- F. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- G. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.



- H. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- I. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- J. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- K. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- L. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- M. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- N. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- O. Install traps on fixture outlets.
  - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
  - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
- Q. Install hot-water dispensers in back top surface of sink or in countertop with spout over sink.
- R. Install escutcheons at piping wall and ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- S. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

**END OF SECTION 224000**

## **SECTION 224700 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS/WATER COOLERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following drinking fountains/water coolers and related components:
  - 1. Pressure water coolers.
  - 2. Water-station water coolers.
  - 3. Remote water coolers.
  - 4. Fixture supports.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Accessible Drinking Fountain/Water Cooler: Fixture that can be approached and used by people with disabilities.
- B. Cast Polymer: Dense, cast-filled-polymer plastic.
- C. Drinking Fountain: Fixture with nozzle for delivering stream of water for drinking.
- D. Fitting: Device that controls flow of water into or out of fixture.
- E. Fixture: Drinking fountain or water cooler unless one is specifically indicated.
- F. Remote Water Cooler: Electrically powered equipment for generating cooled drinking water.
- G. Water Cooler: Electrically powered fixture for generating and delivering cooled drinking water.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each fixture indicated. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act;" and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act;" for fixtures for people with disabilities.
- C. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- D. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for style classifications.
- E. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI 1010, "Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers," for water coolers and with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for type and style classifications.

- F. ASHRAE Standard: Comply with ASHRAE 34, "Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants," for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a (tetrafluoroethane) refrigerant, unless otherwise indicated.

## 1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to ten percent of amount installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than ten of each.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

- A. Water Coolers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Halsey Taylor.
  - 2. Description: ARI 1010, Type PB, pressure with bubbler, Style RE, recessed water cooler.
    - a. Cabinet: All stainless steel.
    - b. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck for each of two bowls.
    - c. Control: Push button or bar.
    - d. Supply: NPS 3/8 with ball, gate, or globe valve.
    - e. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for cyst and lead reduction to below EPA standards; with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.
    - f. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 minimum horizontal waste and trap complying with ASME A112.18.2.
    - g. Cooling System: Electric, with hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.
      - 1) Capacity: 8 gph of 50 deg F cooled water from 80 deg F inlet water and 90 deg F ambient air temperature.
    - h. Ventilation Grille: Stainless steel, located below fountain.
    - i. Support: Mounting frame for attaching to substrate.
  - 3. See Schedule on Drawings.

### 2.2 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Josam Co.
  - 2. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
  - 4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - 5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
  - 6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- B. Description: ASME A112.6.1M, water cooler carriers. Include vertical, steel uprights with feet and tie rods and bearing plates with mounting studs matching fixture to be supported.
  - 1. Type I: Hanger-type carrier with two vertical uprights.
  - 2. Type II: Bilevel, hanger-type carrier with three vertical uprights.
  - 3. Supports for Accessible Fixtures: Include rectangular, vertical, steel uprights instead of steel pipe uprights.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water and waste piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation. Verify that sizes and locations of piping and types of supports match those indicated.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures are to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Use carrier off-floor supports for wall-mounting fixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use mounting frames for recessed water coolers, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Use chrome-plated brass or copper tube, fittings, and valves in locations exposed to view. Plain copper tube, fittings, and valves may be used in concealed locations.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install off-floor supports affixed to building substrate and attach wall-mounting fixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install mounting frames affixed to building construction and attach recessed water coolers to mounting frames, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install fixtures level and plumb. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Use ball, gate, or globe valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- F. Install pipe escutcheons at wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding pipe fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- G. Seal joints between fixtures and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Water Cooler Testing: After electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
  - 1. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
  - 2. Report test results in writing.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust water cooler temperature settings.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing fixture installation, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

**END OF SECTION 224700**

## SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Transition fittings.
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 5. Sleeves.
  - 6. Escutcheons.
  - 7. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 8. Painting and finishing.
  - 9. Supports and anchorages.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
  - 1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  - 2. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  - 3. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Transition fittings.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Escutcheons.
- B. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

### 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
  - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.



- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BA91, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
  - 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
  - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

## 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. NIBCO INC.
    - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Eclipse, Inc.
    - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
    - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
- 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Perfection Corp.
    - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

## 2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

## 2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.

- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
  - 1. New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
    - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
    - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
    - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
    - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw.
    - k. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
  - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
    - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
    - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
    - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
      - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
  - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- R. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- S. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

### 3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.

3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.

K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.

- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
  2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  5. Install shutoff valves on supply and return piping of equipment.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.6 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.7 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.

C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

**END OF SECTION 230500**

## **SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### **1.2 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

#### **2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS**

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

#### **2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
  - 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

**END OF SECTION 230513**



## **SECTION 230525 - EQUIPMENT SCREENING FOR HVAC**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pre-formed metal panels for enclosing roof top mechanical equipment.
  - 2. Galvanized Curb Mounted Assembly Framing for direct attachment of screening panels to Structural Roof Curb; no installing into mechanical equipment allowed.
  - 3. Assembly made to permit easy access to mechanical equipment for servicing.
  - 4. Touch-up painting required for scratches and screw heads.

#### **1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Design Criteria:
  - 1. Manufacturer is responsible for the structural design of all materials, assembly and attachments to resist snow, wind, suction and uplift loading at any point without damage or permanent set. Clearance from equipment shall meet all required code and manufacturer required clearances. Refer to roof plans for units requiring screening.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's catalog data, detail sheets, specification and other data sufficient to indicate compliance with these specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate layouts heights, component connection details, and details of interface with adjacent construction. Mark data to indicate:
- C. Roof top mechanical equipment to be enclosed.
- D. Closeout Submittals: Warranty documents, issued and executed by manufacturer, countersigned by Contractor.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements of building authorities having jurisdiction in Project location.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly indicating manufacturer and material.
- B. Storage and Handling: Protect materials and finishes during handling and installation to prevent damage.

#### **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Installer for work under this Section shall be responsible for coordination of panel and framing sizes and required options with the Contractor's requirements.
  - 1. Request information on sizes and options required from the Contractor.
- B. Submit shop drawings to the Contractor and obtain written approval of shop drawing from the Contractor prior to fabrication.

#### **1.7 WARRANTY**

- A. If any part of the rooftop equipment screen fails because of a manufacturing defect within one year from the date of substantial completion, the manufacturer will furnish without charge the required replacement part(s). Any local transportation, related service labor or diagnostic call charges are not included.
- B. This warranty does not cover failure of your rooftop equipment screen if it is damaged by the Owner, or if the failure is caused by improper installation. In no event shall Warrantor be liable for incidental or consequential damages.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Curbs Plus.
  - 2. Or equal.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Panels: Fabricated from rigid galvalume metal sheets.
- B. Framing: Minimum 18 Gauge LFQ, CQ, G-90 galvanized steel, or heavier gauge (as required)
- C. Threaded Fasteners: All screws, bolts, nut and washers shall be Stainless steel.
  - 1. Fasteners shall be #10-16 x stainless steel TEK screws. Length as required to develop full holding capacity of screw when fastened to Curb Mounted System.

### 2.3 CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide factory metal formed panel systems: Form all components true to shape, accurate in size, square and free from distortion or defects. Cut panels to precise lengths indicated on approved shop drawings.
  - 1. Panel Style and Height
  - 2. Panel Design
- B. Trim: Fabricated from galvanized metal, and finished with the manufacturers standard coating system, unless shown otherwise on drawings.
- C. Framing: Fabricate and assemble in largest practical sizes, for delivery to the site.
  - 1. Construct corner assembly to required shape with joints tightly fitted.

### 2.4 FINISHES

- A. Panel Coating: Manufacturer's standard coating system, factory-applied.
  - 1. Color Selection: Submit paint chip with full range of colors available for Architect's selection. All colors are custom matched for specific jobs.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Installer's Examination: Examine conditions under which construction activities of this section are to be performed.
  - 1. Submit written notification to Architect and Screen manufacturer if such conditions are unacceptable.
  - 2. Beginning erection constitutes installer's acceptance of conditions.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. The Curb Mounted Screen System must be installed in accordance with instructions and as detailed drawings.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protection:
  - 1. Ensure that finishes and structure of installed systems are not damaged by subsequent construction activities.
  - 2. If minor damage to finishes occurs, repair damage in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations; provide replacement components if repaired finishes are unacceptable to Architect.

## END OF SECTION 230525

## **SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Spring hangers.
  - 2. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 210548 "Vibration Controls for Fire Suppression" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
  - 2. Section 220548 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.
  - 1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the manufacturer's qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    - a. Provide approved submittals of all equipment and systems required to have seismic and wind restraint to the seismic restraint provider for use in making calculations and selecting the appropriate seismic restraint devices and systems.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation required to select vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 3. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure and spring deflection changes. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: For situations where limited space necessitates maximum utilization for efficient installation of different components, show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. Select vibration isolating units for the lowest operating speed of equipment, so designed that natural frequency of equipment and base mass is not less than 1.5 times the lowest operating frequency of the moving equipment, but not a multiple or harmonic of the base frequency. Furnish vibration isolation producing a uniform loading and deflection even when equipment weight is not evenly distributed, vibration isolation shall be stable during starting and stopping of equipment without excessive traverse and eccentric movement of equipment.
- B. The installed vibration isolation system for each floor or ceiling mounted item of equipment shall have a maximum lateral motion under equipment start up and shut down conditions of 1/4 inch. Motions in excess shall be restrained by approved spring type mounting.
- C. The type of isolation, base, and minimum static deflection shall be as required for each specific equipment application, but not less than that specified herein when supported on a solid concrete structural slab having a thickness of not less than four (4) inches. Should vibration isolators installed for the equipment prove inadequate to prevent transmission of equipment vibrations to the building structure or limit equipment vibration originated noise in the building spaces to acceptable levels, the isolators shall be replaced with units having the largest deflection that can be practicably installed.
- D. All springs installed out-of-doors shall be cadmium-plated, zinc electroplated or powder-coated after fabrication. Hardware and other metal parts shall be cadmium-plated or galvanized. Galvanizing shall meet ASTM Salt Spray Test Standards and Federal Test Standard No. 14.
- E. All isolators installed out-of-doors shall have base plates with bolt holes for fastening the isolators to the support members.

### 2.2 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. California Dynamics Corporation
    - c. Isolation Technology, Inc.
    - d. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - e. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - f. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - g. Vibration Isolation Co., Inc.
    - h. Vibration Mountings & Controls/Korfund.
    - i. Vibro-Acoustics, Inc.
  - 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  - 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  - 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  - 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  - 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  - 7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
  - 8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod (where required).
  - 9. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

### 2.3 RESTRAINED ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - 2. California Dynamics Corporation

3. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  4. Mason Industries, Inc.
  5. Novia; A Division of C&P
  6. Thybar Corporation
- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.
  - C. Upper Frame: The upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist seismic and wind forces.
  - D. Lower Support Assembly: The lower support assembly shall be formed sheet metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support the upper frame. The lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly. Adjustable, restrained-spring isolators shall be mounted on elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
  - E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.
  - F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.
  - G. Acoustical Barrier: The floating member of the roof curb shall have a perimeter angle cross members to support two layers of 5/8" waterproof sheetrock laid on with staggered joints. Sheetrock must surround ducts to provide a continuous sound break. This acoustical barrier shall be caulked to minimize sound transmission between the rooftop air handling unit and the building. Where the mechanical arrangement makes attachment to the floating member unfeasible, the barrier shall be attached at the highest practical elevation of the fixed curb with provision for 1" thick closed cell neoprene flexible seals around any ductwork. A 4-inch layer of 1.5 density fiberglass shall cover the entire solid roof surface under the unit. Ductwork shall be externally lined with sound absorbent material coated with a dampening compound such as Mason Industries MDC-10 or approved equal. Complete instructions shall be provided by the spring isolation curb manufacturer. Acoustical package shall be Mason Industries, Inc. Type RSC-dB or approved equal.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03.
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- C. Equipment Bases:
  1. Fill concrete inertia bases, after installing base frame, with 3000-psi concrete; trowel to a smooth finish.
    - a. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 3.
  2. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to supported equipment manufacturer's written instructions for seismic codes at Project site.
    - a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
    - b. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.

- c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use Setting Drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
- d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- e. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
- f. Cast-in-place concrete materials and placement requirements are specified in Division 3.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. A representative of the isolation materials manufacturer shall inspect the completed system and report in writing any installation errors, improperly selected isolation or restraint devices, or other faults that could affect the performance of the system.
- B. Prepare manufacturer's representative's test and inspection reports indicating all isolation as being properly installed or requiring correction. If corrections are required, include steps to be taken to properly complete the isolation work.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.

### 3.5 VIBRATION ISOLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Roof Top Units
  - 1. Isolation Type: Spring Isolation Roof Curb
  - 2. Base Deflection: 2"
- B. Roof Mounted Fans:
  - 1. Isolation Type: Restrained Isolation Roof-Curb Rail
  - 2. Base Deflection: 1.5"
- C. Suspended Fan Coil Units:
  - 1. Isolation Type: Spring Hanger
  - 2. Deflection: 0.75"
- D. Air-Cooled Condensers and Condensing Units (On Roof):
  - 1. Isolation Type: Restrained Isolation Roof-Curb Rail
  - 2. Deflection: 1.5"

### END OF SECTION 230548

## SECTION 230553 - HVAC SYSTEM IDENTIFICATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following mechanical identification materials and their installation:
  - 1. Equipment nameplates.
  - 2. Equipment markers.
  - 3. Equipment signs.
  - 4. Access panel and door markers.
  - 5. Duct markers.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," for letter size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices for piping.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Equipment Nameplates: Metal, with data engraved or stamped, for permanent attachment on equipment.
  - 1. Data:
    - a. Manufacturer, product name, model number, and serial number.
    - b. Capacity, operating and power characteristics, and essential data.
    - c. Labels of tested compliances.
  - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
  - 3. Fasteners: As required to mount on equipment.
- B. Equipment Markers: Engraved, color-coded laminated plastic. Include contact-type, permanent adhesive.
  - 1. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible.
  - 2. Data:
    - a. Name and plan number.
    - b. Equipment service.
    - c. Design capacity.
    - d. Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.
  - 3. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4-1/2 by 6 inches for equipment.
- C. Equipment Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
  - 1. Data: Instructions for operation of equipment and for safety procedures.
  - 2. Engraving: Manufacturer's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
  - 3. Thickness: 1/16 inch, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.
- D. Access Panel and Door Markers: 1/16-inch-thick, engraved laminated plastic, with abbreviated terms and numbers corresponding to identification. Provide 1/8-inch center hole for attachment.
  - 1. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 APPLICATIONS, GENERAL

- A. Products specified are for applications referenced in other Sections. If more than single-type material, device, or label is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install and permanently fasten equipment nameplates on each major item of mechanical equipment that does not have nameplate or has nameplate that is damaged or located where not easily visible. Locate nameplates where accessible and visible. Include nameplates for the following general categories of equipment:
1. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
  2. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
  3. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
  4. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
  5. Air handling equipment.
- B. Install equipment markers with permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Data required for markers may be included on signs, and markers may be omitted if both are indicated.
1. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  2. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
  3. Locate markers where accessible and visible. Include markers for the following general categories of equipment:
    - a. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
    - b. Meters, gages, thermometers, and similar units.
    - c. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
    - d. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
    - e. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
    - f. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
    - g. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
    - h. Tanks and pressure vessels.
    - i. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.
- C. Install equipment signs with screws or permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Locate signs where accessible and visible.
1. Identify mechanical equipment with equipment markers in the following color codes:
    - a. Green: For cooling equipment and components.
    - b. Yellow: For heating equipment and components.
    - c. Orange: For combination cooling and heating equipment and components.
    - d. Brown: For energy-reclamation equipment and components.
  2. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  3. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
  4. Include signs for the following general categories of equipment:
    - a. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
    - b. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
    - c. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
- D. Install access panel markers with screws on equipment access panels.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by other work.
- B. Clean faces of mechanical identification devices and glass frames of valve schedules.

**END OF SECTION 230553**



## **SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
    - a. Constant-volume air systems.
    - b. Variable-air-volume systems.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. TAB Report: Documentation of work performed for ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Certified TAB reports.
- E. Sample report forms.
- F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. TAB Firm Qualifications: Engage a TAB firm certified by NEBB or AABC.
- B. Certification of TAB Reports: Certify TAB field data reports. This certification includes the following:
  - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
  - 2. Certify that TAB team complied with approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy completed areas of building during construction. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the efforts of factory-authorized service representatives for systems and equipment, HVAC controls installers, and other mechanics to operate HVAC systems and equipment to support and assist TAB activities.
- B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on NEBB or AABC forms stating that NEBB or AABC will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee shall include the following provisions:
  - 1. The certified TAB firm has tested and balanced systems according to the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Systems are balanced to optimum performance capabilities within design and installation limits.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
  - 1. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- B. Examine approved submittal data of HVAC systems and equipment.
- C. Examine Project Record Documents described in Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents."
- D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system. Calculate system effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from those presented when the equipment was performance tested at the factory. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," Sections 7 through 10; or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems--Duct Design," Sections 5 and 6. Compare this data with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine system and equipment test reports.
- H. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are properly installed, and that their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- I. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.

- J. Examine HVAC equipment to ensure that clean filters have been installed, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- K. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, to verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- L. Examine strainers for clean screens and proper perforations.
- M. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- N. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- O. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- P. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.
- Q. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:
  - 1. Dampers, valves, and other controlled devices are operated by the intended controller.
  - 2. Dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
  - 3. Integrity of valves and dampers for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions. This includes dampers in multizone units, mixing boxes, and variable-air-volume terminals.
  - 4. Automatic modulating and shutoff valves, including two-way valves and three-way mixing and diverting valves, are properly connected.
  - 5. Thermostats and humidistats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
  - 6. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
  - 7. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
  - 8. Controller set points are set at indicated values.
  - 9. Interlocked systems are operating.
  - 10. Changeover from heating to cooling mode occurs according to indicated values.
- R. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:
  - 1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
  - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
  - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
  - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
  - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
  - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
  - 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
  - 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" or AABC's "National standards for Total System Balance" and this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials identical to those removed. Restore vapor barrier and finish according to insulation Specifications for this Project.
- C. Mark equipment and balancing device settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outside-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers, through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling unit components.
- L. Check for proper sealing of air duct system.

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
    - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
    - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
  - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
    - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
  - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
  - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  - 6. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  - 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
  - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
    - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.

2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
  3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
  2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
- B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
  2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
  3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
  4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
    - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
  6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
    - a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
  8. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer, model, and serial numbers.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Efficiency rating.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass for the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations, including controller manufacturer, model and serial numbers, and nameplate data.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENTS

- A. During TAB, report the need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.
- B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures every other hour for a period of two successive eight-hour days, in each separately controlled zone, to prove correctness of final temperature settings. Measure when the building or zone is occupied.
- C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

### 3.9 TEMPERATURE-CONTROL VERIFICATION

- A. Verify that controllers are calibrated and commissioned.
- B. Check transmitter and controller locations and note conditions that would adversely affect control functions.
- C. Record controller settings and note variances between set points and actual measurements.
- D. Check the operation of limiting controllers (i.e., high- and low-temperature controllers).
- E. Check free travel and proper operation of control devices such as damper and valve operators.
- F. Check the sequence of operation of control devices. Note air pressures and device positions and correlate with airflow and water flow measurements. Note the speed of response to input changes.
- G. Check the interaction of electrically operated switch transducers.
- H. Check the interaction of interlock and lockout systems.
- I. Check main control supply-air pressure and observe compressor and dryer operations.
- J. Record voltages of power supply and controller output. Determine whether the system operates on a grounded or nongrounded power supply.
- K. Note operation of electric actuators using spring return for proper fail-safe operations.

### 3.10 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: 0 to plus 5 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: 0 to plus 10 percent.
  - 3. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: 0 to plus 10 percent.

### 3.11 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Typewritten, or computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in three-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.
- B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 1. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- C. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- D. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:
  - 1. Title page.

2. Name and address of TAB firm.
  3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB firm who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer, type size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports varies from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- E. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outside, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and steam flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.

### 3.12 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional testing, inspecting, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

### END OF SECTION 230593





## **SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Low and medium pressure supply.
  - 2. Outdoor air.
  - 3. Relief air.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets or covering.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

#### **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### **1.7 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

#### **1.8 SCHEDULING**

- A. Schedule insulation application after any required ductwork pressure testing is complete. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Duct Insulation Schedule for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
    - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
    - d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
    - b. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
    - c. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
    - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

### 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; CP-127.
    - b. Eagle Bridges; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand; 85-60/85-70.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; CP-82.
    - b. Eagle Bridges; 225.
    - c. Foster Brand; 85-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
  - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; CP-50 AHV2.
    - b. Foster Brand; 30-36.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
  3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; CP-76.
    - b. Eagle Bridges; 405.
    - c. Foster Brand; 95-44.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: Aluminum.
  6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

## 2.8 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. ABI; 491 AWF FSK.
    - b. Avery Dennison Corporation; Fasson 0827.
    - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.

- d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
- 2. Width: 3 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

## 2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
  - 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- E. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- F. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- G. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations. No penetration in insulation is permitted at hangers, supports, and other projections.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and supports.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- I. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive sealing tape.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

J. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

K. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

L. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

1. Firestopping materials and fire-resistive joint sealers applicable for the installation.

C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket or Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
  - a. On duct sides or bottom with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
  - b. On duct sides or bottom with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
  - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
  - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
  - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
  - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
  - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
  - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.

6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.7 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to ductwork insulation schedule on drawings.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
  1. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
  2. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
  3. Flexible connectors.
  4. Vibration-control devices.
  5. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

**END OF SECTION 230713**

## SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
  - 1. Refrigerant piping.
  - 2. Coil condensate drain piping.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- B. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
    - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
    - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

#### 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
    - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
    - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
  - 2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Use adhesive that complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers," including 2004 Addenda.

## 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
    - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
    - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
    - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
    - e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.



- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- L. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

### 3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.

6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
  4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
  2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.6 FINISHES

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.9 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick.
  - 1. All refrigerant piping shall be insulated.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick.
  - 1. All refrigerant piping shall be insulated.
- C. Coil Condensate Drain Piping: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick.

3.10 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping: Insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - a. Provide aluminum jacket with stainless steel bands.
- B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing: Insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - a. Provide aluminum jacket with stainless steel bands.

**END OF SECTION 230719**



## **SECTION 230900 - INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each control device indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Schematic flow diagrams.
  - 2. Power, signal, and control wiring diagrams.
  - 3. Details of control panel faces.
  - 4. Valve schedule.
  - 5. DDC System Hardware: Wiring diagrams, schematic floor plans, and schematic control diagrams.
  - 6. Control System Software: Schematic diagrams, written descriptions, and points list.
- C. Software and firmware operational documentation.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and maintenance data.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

#### **2.2 CONTROL SYSTEM**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Trane – South Valley Middle School.
  - 2. Johnson Controls – Discovery Middle School and EPiC Elementary School.
- B. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.
- C. All points of user interface shall be on standard PC's that do not require the purchase of special software from the BMS manufacturer for use as a building operations terminal. The primary point of interface on these PC's will be a standard web browser.
- D. The BMS shall be a web-based application with microprocessor-based interoperable BACnet or LonWorks controllers in accordance with the ANSI/ASHRAE 135-2004 and most recent addendums. The system supplier must provide a PICS document showing the installed systems compliance level to the ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135-2004. The BMS system shall communicate using the BACnet or LonWorks "open" protocol at both the supervisor and device level.

- E. Integration of standalone microprocessors into the BMS shall be provided by either hardware points or as part of the packaged equipment control. Acceptable protocols to be provided for integration are:
  - 1. BACnet IP
  - 2. BACnet Ethernet
  - 3. BACnet MSTP
  - 4. BACnet ARCnet
  - 5. LonWorks
  - 6. Modbus RTU
  
- F. BMS points in addition to and including those outlined herein or on the drawings shall be provided:
  - 1. Temperatures after each coil shall be monitored.
  - 2. Supply air temperature and space temperature shall be monitored for each unit.
  - 3. Digital status for each piece of controlled equipment shall be monitored.
  - 4. For each physical point provide a document which, at a minimum, shall indicate the following:
    - a. User point identification name
    - b. Logical point name
    - c. Alarmable (yes or no)
    - d. Point description
    - e. BMS panel ID
    - f. Fail position (open/closed, on/off)
    - g. Digital or Analog
    - h. Analog control range (temperature, pressure, etc.)
    - i. Analog input/output range (Volts, mA, psi, etc.)
    - j. Analog high limit alarm
    - k. Analog low limit alarm
    - l. For each virtual point provide a document which, at a minimum, shall indicate the following: User point identification name, Logical point name, Point function and use.
  - 5. All input points shall be alarmed. All alarms shall allow recognition, management and remote alarming.
  
- G. The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard web browser such as Internet Explorer, Google Chrome, or Mozilla Firefox. Systems requiring additional software (to enable a standard web browser) to be resident on the client machine, or manufacturer-specific browsers shall not be acceptable.

## 2.3 DDC EQUIPMENT

- A. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.
  - 1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation.
  - 2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
    - a. Global communications.
    - b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
    - c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
    - d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
    - e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.
  
- B. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.
  - 1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
  - 2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
    - a. Global communications.
    - b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
    - c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
  - 3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation.
  
- C. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.
  - 1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
  - 2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
  - 3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.
  - 4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation with three-position (on-off-auto) override switches and status lights.

5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA) with status lights, two-position (auto-manual) switch, and manually adjustable potentiometer.
  6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
  7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.
- D. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:
1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
  2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
  3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.
- E. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:
1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
  2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
  3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
  4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

## 2.4 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

- A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.
1. Configuration: Diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.
  2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
  3. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.

## 2.5 ANALOG CONTROLLERS

- A. Step Controllers: 6- or 10-stage type, with heavy-duty switching rated to handle loads and operated by electric motor.
- B. Electronic Controllers: Wheatstone-bridge-amplifier type, in steel enclosure with provision for remote-resistance readjustment. Identify adjustments on controllers, including proportional band and authority.
1. Single controllers can be integral with control motor if provided with accessible control readjustment potentiometer.

## 2.6 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

- A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.
- B. Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:
1. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F at calibration point.
  2. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
  3. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 18 inches long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m).
  4. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 36 inches long, flexible, 18 inches long, rigid; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 10 sq. ft.
  5. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
  6. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
    - a. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
    - b. Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
    - c. Thermometer: Concealed.
    - d. Color: color selection from manufacturer's full range.
    - e. Orientation: Vertical.
  7. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
  8. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

## 2.7 STATUS SENSORS

- A. Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg.
- B. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.
- C. Voltage Transmitter (100- to 600-V ac): Comply with ISA 50.00.01, single-loop, self-powered transmitter, adjustable, with suitable range and 1 percent full-scale accuracy.
- D. Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.
- E. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.

## 2.8 THERMOSTATS

- A. Thermostats for Use with DDC Controllers Controlling Terminal Units:
  - 1. 100- or 1000-ohm platinum RTD or thermistor.
  - 2. Thermistor:
    - a. Pre-aged, burned in, and coated with glass; inserted in a metal sleeve; and entire unit encased in epoxy.
    - b. Thermistor drift shall be less than plus or minus 0.5 deg F over 10 years.
  - 3. Temperature Transmitter Requirements:
    - a. Mating transmitter required with each 100-ohm RTD.
    - b. Mating transmitters optional for 1000-ohm RTD and thermistor, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.
  - 4. Provide digital display of sensed temperature.
  - 5. Provide sensor with local control.
    - a. Local override to turn HVAC on.
    - b. Local adjustment of temperature set point.
    - c. Both features shall be capable of manual override through control system operator.
- B. Airstream Thermostats: Two-pipe, fully proportional, single-temperature type; with adjustable set point in middle of range, adjustable throttling range, plug-in test fitting or permanent pressure gage, remote bulb, bimetal rod and tube, or averaging element.
- C. Electric, Low-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or below set point.
  - 1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
  - 2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.
- D. Electric, High-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or above set point.
  - 1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
  - 2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.

## 2.9 ACTUATORS

- A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
  - 1. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
  - 2. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
  - 3. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
  - 4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.



5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
- B. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
1. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:
    - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
    - f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
  2. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
  3. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
  4. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
  5. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24-V ac.
  6. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
  7. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
  8. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
  9. Run Time: 150 seconds.

## 2.10 DAMPERS

- A. Dampers: AMCA-rated, parallel-blade design; 0.108-inch minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch-minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch-thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches and length of 48 inches.
1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch-diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with oil-impregnated sintered bronze blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
  2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
  3. Edge Seals, Standard Pressure Applications: Closed-cell neoprene.
  4. Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf; when tested according to AMCA 500D.

## 2.11 CONTROL CABLE

- A. All cable shall be installed in conduit.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches above the floor.
1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.
- B. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.
- C. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 23 Section "HVAC System Identification."
- D. Install duct volume-control dampers according to Division 15 Sections specifying air ducts.

### 3.2 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Controls contractor is responsible for providing all power to the controls systems.
- B. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes."

- C. Install building wire and cable according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- D. Install signal and communication cable as described below:
  - 1. Install exposed cable in raceway.
  - 2. Install concealed cable in raceway.
  - 3. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
  - 4. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
  - 5. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
  - 6. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- E. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.
- F. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
  - 3. Test calibration of controllers by disconnecting input sensors and stimulating operation with compatible signal generator.
  - 4. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
  - 5. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
  - 6. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
  - 7. Test software and hardware interlocks.
- C. DDC Verification:
  - 1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
  - 2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
  - 3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
  - 4. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.
  - 5. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
  - 6. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
  - 7. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
  - 8. Check DDC system as follows:
    - a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
    - b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
    - c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
    - d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.
- D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

### 3.4 CONTROL AND MONITORING POINTS

- A. Refer to Sequences of Operation on Drawings.

## END OF SECTION 230900

## **SECTION 231123 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping specialties.
  - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 4. Valves.
  - 5. Pressure regulators.
  - 6. Concrete bases.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

#### **1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Service Regulators: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Minimum Operating Pressure of Service Meter: 5 psig.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: 2.0 psig or less.
- C. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for natural-gas piping and equipment, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

#### **1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
  - 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
  - 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
  - 5. Dielectric fittings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
  - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot.
  - 2. Detail mounting, supports, and valve arrangements for service meter assembly and pressure regulator assembly.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For natural-gas piping and equipment indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For motorized gas valves and pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without Construction Manager's written permission.

#### 1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 08 31 13 "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
  5. Mechanical Couplings:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Dresser Piping Specialties; Division of Dresser, Inc.
      - 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.
      - 3) Pre-approved equal.
    - b. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
    - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
    - d. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
    - e. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
    - f. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Appliance Flexible Connectors:
1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
  2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
  3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
  4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
  5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
  6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
  7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  8. Maximum Length: 72 inches
- C. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.
1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
  2. Nitrile seals.
  3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
  4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
  5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.
- D. Y-Pattern Strainers:
1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
  2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
  4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
- E. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

### 2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

- C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

## 2.3 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
  4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
  3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
    - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
    - f. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Lee Brass Company.
    - b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - c. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  3. Plug: Bronze.
  4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
  6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
  7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- F. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Flowserve.
    - b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.

- c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
- d. Milliken Valve Company.
- e. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
- f. R&M Energy Systems, A Unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
- g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
- 3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
- 4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
- 5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
- 6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
- 7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
- 8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
- 9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

## 2.4 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

- A. Automatic Gas Valves: Comply with ANSI Z21.21.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; Division of Emerson.
    - b. Dungs, Karl, Inc.
    - c. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
    - d. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
    - e. Honeywell International Inc.
    - f. Johnson Controls.
    - g. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Body: Brass or aluminum.
  - 3. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
  - 4. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
  - 5. Normally closed.
  - 6. Visual position indicator.
  - 7. Electrical operator for actuation by appliance automatic shutoff device.
- B. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; Division of Emerson.
    - b. Dungs, Karl, Inc.
    - c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
    - d. Goyen Valve Corp.; Tyco Environmental Systems.
    - e. Magnatrol Valve Corporation.
    - f. Parker Hannifin Corporation; Climate & Industrial Controls Group; Skinner Valve Div.
    - g. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - h. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Pilot operated.
  - 3. Body: Brass or aluminum.
  - 4. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
  - 5. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
  - 6. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil, and replaceable.
  - 7. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
  - 8. Normally closed.
  - 9. Visual position indicator.

## 2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
  - 2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
  - 3. Elevation compensator.
  - 4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- B. Service Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Actaris.
  - b. American Meter Company.
  - c. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
  - d. Invensys.
  - e. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
  - f. Pre-approved equal.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
  3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
  4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
  5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
  6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
  7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
  8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
  9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
  10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
  11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
  12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.
- C. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Actaris.
    - b. American Meter Company.
    - c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
    - d. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
    - e. Invensys.
    - f. Maxitrol Company.
    - g. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
    - h. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
  3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
  4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
  5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
  6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
  7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
  8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
  9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
  10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
  11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
  12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 5 psig.
- D. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Canadian Meter Company Inc.
    - b. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
    - c. Harper Wyman Co.
    - d. Maxitrol Company.
    - e. SCP, Inc.
    - f. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
  3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
  4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
  5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
  6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
  7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
  8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.



## 2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - d. Jomar International Ltd.
    - e. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
    - i. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
    - f. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - c. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Central Plastics Company.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
    - e. Pre-approved equal.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

## 2.7 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

### 3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
  - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
  - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
  - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
  - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Install pressure gage downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 23 05 19 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.

- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
  - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
  - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
  - 3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
  - 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
  - 5. Prohibited Locations:
    - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install pressure gage downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 23 05 19 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 23 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 23 05 18 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.5 SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

- A. Install service-meter assemblies aboveground, on concrete bases.
- B. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service regulators. Shutoff valves are not required at second regulators if two regulators are installed in series.
- C. Install strainer on inlet of service-pressure regulator and meter set.

- D. Install service regulators mounted outside with vent outlet horizontal or facing down. Install screen in vent outlet if not integral with service regulator.
- E. Install metal shutoff valves upstream from service meters. Install dielectric fittings downstream from service meters.
- F. Install service meters downstream from pressure regulators.
- G. Install metal bollards to protect meter assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for pipe bollards.

### 3.6 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

### 3.7 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
  4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
  1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
  2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
- F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
- G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

### 3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
  5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

### 3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.10 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.11 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior latex (low sheen).
    - d. Color: Gray.
  - 2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (eggshell).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.12 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases a minimum of 4 inches and a maximum of 6 inches high, and not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
6. Use 3000-psig, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.14 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

### 3.15 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground natural-gas pipings shall be one of the following:
  1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- B. Branch Piping in Cast-in-Place Concrete to Single Appliance: Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Install piping embedded in concrete with no joints in concrete.
- C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

### 3.16 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
  1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- D. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

### 3.17 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:
  1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
  2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  3. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
  1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  2. Bronze plug valve.
  3. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.

2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  3. Bronze plug valve.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be one of the following:
1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  2. Bronze plug valve.
  3. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.
- E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
  2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  3. Bronze plug valve.

**END OF SECTION 231123**





## **SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
  - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
  - 3. Refrigerants.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty.
  - 1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
    - a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
    - b. Solenoid valves.
    - c. Filter dryers.
    - d. Strainers.
    - e. Pressure-regulating valves.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
  - 2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
  - 3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
  - 4. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

#### **1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

#### **1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
  - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
  - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
  - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
  - 4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
  - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
  - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
  - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
  - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
  - 1. Solenoid valves.
  - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
  - 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
  - 4. Compressor.
- K. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.

- L. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Refer to Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- Q. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:
  - 1. Shot blast the interior of piping.
  - 2. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.
  - 3. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
  - 4. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
  - 5. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.
  - 6. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.
- R. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

- S. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "HVAC System Identification."
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
  - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
  - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and to restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.
- H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
- D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
  - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
  - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
  - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
  - 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
  - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  - 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

### END OF SECTION 232300



## **SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
  - 4. Sheet metal materials.
  - 5. Duct liner.
  - 6. Sealants and gaskets.
  - 7. Hangers and supports.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
  - 2. Section 233300 "Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### **1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
  - 1. Liners and adhesives.
  - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
  - 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
  - 4. Elevation of top of ducts.
  - 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
  - 6. Fittings.
  - 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
  - 8. Seam and joint construction.
  - 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
  - 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
  - 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
  - 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

#### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
  - a. Luminaires.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing



requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

## 2.3 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Round Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct diameter of the inner duct.
- B. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    - a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
  2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    - a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
    - b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
  3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- D. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
  3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
  4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

## 2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.5 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:

- a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
    - b. Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  3. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
  7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
  8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.
    - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
    - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
  9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
    - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
  10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
  2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  4. Water resistant.
  5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  2. Type: S.
  3. Grade: NS.
  4. Class: 25.

5. Use: O.

D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

## 2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead.
- C. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- D. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 3. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
  - 4. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 7. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
  - 8. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
  - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  - 2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
    - e. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  - 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  - 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  - 6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
  - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
  - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
    - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.9 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated.

B. Refer to Ductwork Schedule on Drawings.

**END OF SECTION 233113**

## SECTION 233300 - DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Backdraft dampers.
  - 2. Volume dampers.
  - 3. Fire dampers.
  - 4. Smoke dampers.
  - 5. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
  - 6. Turning vanes.
  - 7. Duct-mounting access doors.
  - 8. Flexible connectors.
  - 9. Flexible ducts.
  - 10. Duct accessory hardware.
  - 11. Duct silencers.
- B. See "Fire Alarm" for duct-mounting fire and smoke detectors.
- C. See Division 23 Section "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls" for electric and pneumatic damper actuators.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Backdraft dampers.
  - 2. Volume dampers.
  - 3. Fire dampers.
  - 4. Ceiling fire dampers.
  - 5. Smoke dampers.
  - 6. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
  - 7. Turning vanes.
  - 8. Duct-mounting access doors.
  - 9. Flexible connectors.
  - 10. Flexible ducts.
  - 11. Duct Silencers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Special fittings.
  - 2. Manual-volume damper installations.
  - 3. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, and combination fire- and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves and duct-mounting access doors.
  - 4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

## 2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M and having G90 coating designation; ducts shall have mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces exposed to view.
- C. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 480/A 480M.
- D. Aluminum Sheets: ASTM B 209, alloy 3003, temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221, alloy 6063, temper T6.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
  - 3. CESCO Products.
  - 4. Duro Dyne Corp.
  - 5. Greenheck.
  - 6. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
  - 7. Prefco Products, Inc.
  - 8. Ruskin Company.
  - 9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  - 10. Pottorff.
  - 11. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Multiple-blade, parallel action gravity balanced, with center-pivoted blades of maximum 6-inch width, with sealed edges, assembled in rattle-free manner with 90-degree stop, steel ball bearings, and axles; adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
- C. Frame: 0.052-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.
- D. Blades: 0.050-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
- E. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- F. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- G. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

## 2.4 VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
  - 3. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  - 5. METALAIR, Inc.
  - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.



8. Ruskin Company.
9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
10. Greenheck Fan Corporation
11. Pottorff.
12. Pre-approved equal.

- B. General Description: Factory fabricated, with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.
- C. Standard Volume Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel channels, minimum of 0.064 inch thick, with mitered and welded corners; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
  2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  3. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
  4. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze.
  5. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- D. Jackshaft: 1-inch-diameter, galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
  1. Length and Number of Mountings: Appropriate to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- E. Damper Hardware: Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Air Balance, Inc.
  2. CESCO Products.
  3. Greenheck.
  4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  5. METALAIR, Inc.
  6. Nailor Industries Inc.
  7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
  8. Prefco Products, Inc.
  9. Ruskin Company.
  10. Vent Products Company, Inc.
  11. Ward Industries, Inc.
  12. Pottorff.
  13. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Fire dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555.
- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours for dampers in walls rated 2-hours or less. 3 hour rating for dampers in walls rated greater than 2-hours.
- D. Frame: Low pressure applications (2" wg and less): curtain type with blades inside airstream; for ductwork constructed in higher pressure applications (above 2" wg): curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
  1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch thick and of length to suit application.
  2. Exceptions: Omit sleeve where damper frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor, and thickness of damper frame complies with sleeve requirements.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

- G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- I. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.

## 2.6 SMOKE OR COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
  - 2. CESCO Products.
  - 3. Greenheck.
  - 4. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 5. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
  - 6. Ruskin Company.
  - 7. Pottorff.
  - 8. Pre-approved equal
- B. General Description: Labeled according to UL 555S. Combination fire and smoke dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555 for 1-1/2-hour rating.
- C. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.
- D. Frame and Blades: 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
- F. Damper Motors: Modulating and two-position action.
  - 1. Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
  - 2. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
  - 3. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outside-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
  - 4. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
  - 5. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

## 2.7 TURNING VANES

- A. Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for vanes and vane runners. Vane runners shall automatically align vanes.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate 1-1/2-inch-wide, double-vane, curved blades of galvanized sheet steel set 3/4 inch o.c.; support with bars perpendicular to blades set 2 inches o.c.; and set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    - b. Duro Dyne Corp.
    - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
    - d. Ward Industries, Inc.
    - e. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- D. Turning vanes to be provided at all elbows of all angles, with and without acoustic duct lining.

## 2.8 DUCT-MOUNTING ACCESS DOORS

- A. General Description: Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

- B. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and rectangular; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Warming and Ventilating.
    - b. CESCO Products.
    - c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    - d. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
    - e. Greenheck.
    - f. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
    - g. Nailor Industries Inc.
    - h. Ventfabrics, Inc.
    - i. Ward Industries, Inc.
    - j. Elgen Manufacturing
    - k. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  3. Provide number of hinges and locks as follows:
    - a. Less Than 12 Inches Square: Secure with two sash locks.
    - b. Up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
    - c. Up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
    - d. Sizes 24 by 48 Inches and Larger: One additional hinge.
- C. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and round; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and 1-inch thickness. Include cam latches.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    - b. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
    - c. Pre-approved equal.
  2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with spin-in notched frame.
- D. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber.
- E. Insulation: 1-inch-thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

## 2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Corp.
  3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  4. Ward Industries, Inc.
  5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. General Description: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
  2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

## 2.10 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  2. Thermaflex.
  3. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  4. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Insulated-Duct Connectors: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.

- C. Flexible Duct Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action, in sizes 3 through 18 inches to suit duct size.

## 2.11 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## 2.12 DUCT SILENCERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Industrial Acoustics Company.
  - 2. Vibroacoustics.
  - 3. Price Industries.
- B. General Requirements:
  - 1. Furnish and install "Quiet-Duct" (rectangular) silencers of the types and sizes shown on the plans and/or listed in the schedule. Silencers shall be the product of Industrial Acoustics Company. Any specification change must be submitted in writing and approved by the Architect/Engineer, in writing, at least 10 days prior to the bid due-date.
- C. Materials:
  - 1. Outer casings of rectangular silencers shall be made of 22 gauge type #G-90 lock-former-quality galvanized steel unless otherwise noted on schedule.
  - 2. Interior partitions for rectangular silencers shall be not less than 26 gauge type #G-90 galvanized lock-former-quality perforated steel.
  - 3. Filler material shall be inorganic glass fiber of a proper density to obtain the specified acoustic performance and be packed under not less than 5% compression to eliminate voids due to vibration and settling. Material shall be inert, vermin- and moisture-proof.
  - 4. Combustion ratings for the silencer acoustic fill shall be not greater than the following when tested to ASTM E 84, NFPA Standard 255, or UL No. 723:
    - a. Flamespread Classification: 20.
    - b. Smoke Development Rating: 20.
- D. Construction:
  - 1. Units shall be constructed in accordance with the ASHRAE Guide recommendations for high pressure duct work. Seams shall be lock formed and mastic filled. Rectangular casing seams shall be in the corners of the silencer shell to provide maximum unit strength and rigidity. Interior partitions shall be fabricated from single-piece, margin-perforated sheets and shall have die-formed entrance and exit shapes so as to provide the maximum aerodynamic efficiency and minimum self-noise characteristics in the sound attenuator. Blunt noses or squared off partitions will not be accepted.
  - 2. Attachment of the interior partitions to the casing shall be by means of an interlocking track assembly. Tracks shall be solid galvanized steel and shall be welded to the outer casing. Attachment of the interior partitions to the tracks shall be such that a minimum of 4 thicknesses of metal exist at this location. The track assembly shall stiffen the exterior casing, provide a reinforced attachment detail for the interior partitions, and shall maintain a uniform airspace width along the length of the silencer for consistent aerodynamic and acoustic performance. Interior partitions shall be additionally secured to the outer casing with welded nose clips at both ends of the sound attenuator.
  - 3. Sound attenuating units shall not fail structurally when subjected to a differential air pressure of 8 inches water gauge from inside to outside the casing. Airtight construction shall be provided by use of a duct sealing compound on the job-site material and labor furnished by the contractor.
- E. Acoustic Performance:
  - 1. All silencer ratings shall be determined in a duct-to-reverberant room test facility which provides for airflow in both directions through the test silencer in accordance with ASTM Specification E477-99. The test facility shall be NVLAP accredited for the ASTM E477-99 test standard. Data from a non-accredited laboratory will not be acceptable. The test set-up and procedure shall be such that all effects due to end reflection, directivity, flanking transmission, standing waves and test chamber sound absorption are eliminated. Acoustic ratings shall include Dynamic Insertion Loss (DIL) and Self-Noise (SN) Power Levels both for FORWARD FLOW (air and noise in same direction) and REVERSE FLOW (air and noise in opposite

directions) with airflow of at least 2000 fpm entering face velocity. Data for rectangular and tubular type silencers shall be presented for tests conducted using silencers no smaller than the following cross-sections:

- a. Rectangular, inch: 24x24, 24x30, or 24x36.
- b. Tubular, inch: 12, 24, 36, and 48.

F. Aerodynamic Performance:

1. Static pressure loss of silencers shall not exceed 0.05" wg. Airflow measurements shall be made in accordance with ASTM specification E477-99 and applicable portions of ASME, AMCA, and ADC airflow test codes. Tests shall be reported on the identical units for which acoustic data is presented.

G. Certification:

1. With submittals, the manufacturer shall supply certified test data on Dynamic Insertion Loss, Self-Noise Power Levels, and Aerodynamic Performance for Reverse and Forward Flow test conditions. Test data shall be for a standard product. All rating tests shall be conducted in the same facility, shall utilize the same silencer, and shall be open to inspection upon request from the Architect/Engineer.

H. Duct Transitions:

1. When transitions are required to adapt silencer dimensions to connecting duct work they shall be furnished by the installing contractor.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 APPLICATION AND INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Provide duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers in ducts with liner; avoid damage to and erosion of duct liner.
- E. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches lead from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install at a minimum of two duct widths from branch takeoff.
- F. Provide test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers, with fusible links, according to manufacturer's UL-approved written instructions.
- H. Install duct access doors to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units as follows:
  1. On both sides of duct coils.
  2. Downstream from volume dampers and equipment.
  3. Adjacent to fire or smoke dampers, providing access to reset or reinstall fusible links.
  4. To interior of ducts for cleaning; before and after each change in direction, at maximum 50-foot spacing.
  5. On sides of ducts where adequate clearance is available.
- I. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, rectangular access doors:
  1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  6. Body Plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, round access doors:
  1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 inches in diameter.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 10 inches in diameter.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 12 inches in diameter.

- 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 18 inches in diameter.
- 5. Body Access: 24 inches in diameter.

K. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "HVAC System Identification."

L. Install flexible connectors immediately adjacent to equipment in ducts associated with fans and motorized equipment supported by vibration isolators.

M. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to low pressure ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.

O. Install duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.

B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.

C. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing."

**END OF SECTION 233300**

## **SECTION 233416 - CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Centrifugal roof ventilators

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and maintenance data.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.
- C. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Greenheck.
  - 2. Loren Cook Company.
  - 3. Twin City Fan.
  - 4. PennBarry.
- B. Kitchen exhaust fans shall be by the same manufacturer as the kitchen hood. Refer to Section 233813.
- C. Description: Direct- or belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.
- D. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle or upblast as scheduled; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
  - 1. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- F. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, with the following features:
  - 1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
  - 2. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
  - 3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
  - 4. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- G. Accessories:
  - 1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
  - 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.

3. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
- H. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
  1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
  2. Overall Height: 12 inches.
  3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
  4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
  5. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
  6. Vented Curb: Unlined with louvered vents in vertical sides.

## 2.2 MOTORS

- A. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Support units using elastomeric mounts having a static deflection of 1 inch.
  1. Secure vibration controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.
- C. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- D. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and elastomeric hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch.
- E. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- F. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Mechanical Identification."
- G. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories."
- H. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- I. Ground equipment according to Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- J. Connect wiring according to Section "Conductors and Cables."
- K. Install units on curbs per manufacturer's installation instructions.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  5. Adjust belt tension.
  6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.



9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

**END OF SECTION 233416**



## **SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes ceiling, wall and floor-mounted diffusers, registers, and grilles.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate Drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

#### **2.2 GRILLES, DIFFUSERS AND REGISTERS**

- A. See schedule on the drawings.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Krueger.
    - b. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
    - c. Price Industries.
    - d. Titus.
    - e. Architectural Grille (Tag: LBG-1 only)

#### **2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practicable. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers.

#### **3.2 ADJUSTING**

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

### **END OF SECTION 233713**



## **SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes packaged, small-capacity (less than or equal to 20-ton), rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components:
  - 1. Casings.
  - 2. Fans, drives, and motors.
  - 3. Rotary heat exchangers.
  - 4. Coils.
  - 5. Refrigerant circuit components.
  - 6. Air filtration.
  - 7. Gas furnaces.
  - 8. Dampers.
  - 9. Electrical power connections.
  - 10. Controls.
  - 11. Roof curbs.
  - 12. Accessories.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of RTU.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning unit.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. System startup reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace (parts and labor) components of outdoor, semi-custom, air-handling unit that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Trane.
  2. Aeon.
  3. Daikin Applied.
  4. Lennox.

### 2.2 UNIT CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.
- B. Single-Wall Construction:
1. Outside Casing Wall: Galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge thick with manufacturer's standard finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
  2. Floor Plate: G90 galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge thick.
  3. Casing Insulation:
    - a. Materials: Injected polyurethane foam insulation.
    - b. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Static-Pressure Classifications:
1. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 2-inch wg.
  2. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 2-inch wg.
- E. Panels and Doors:
1. Panels:
    - a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced with same materials and insulation thickness as casing.
    - b. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against air-pressure differential.
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    - d. Size: Large enough to allow inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components.
  2. Locations and Applications:
    - a. Fan Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - b. Access Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - c. Coil Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - d. Damper Section: Inspection and access panels.
    - e. Filter Section: Inspection and access panels large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
    - f. Mixing Section: Inspection and access panels.
- F. Condensate Drain Pans:
1. Location: Each type of cooling coil.
  2. Construction:
    - a. Single-wall, stainless steel sheet.
  3. Drain Connection:
    - a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
    - b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
  4. Slope: Minimum 0.125-in./ft. slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
  5. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face for distance to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
  6. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
  7. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.

## 2.3 FANS, DRIVES, AND MOTORS

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
- B. Supply-Air Fans: Centrifugal, rated according to AMCA 210; galvanized or painted steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
  - 1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
    - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
  - 2. Shaft Bearings:
    - a. Heavy-duty, self-aligning, pillow-block type with an L-50 rated life of minimum 100,000 hours according to ABMA 9.
  - 3. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
    - a. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
  - 4. Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow and mechanically fastened to flange and backplate; steel or aluminum hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
  - 5. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting devices.
  - 6. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip minimum 3-1/2 inches wide, attached to two strips of minimum 2-3/4-inch-wide by 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet.
    - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Drives, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.
- D. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motors.
- E. Relief-Air Fan: Forward curved, shaft mounted on permanently lubricated motor.
- F. Motors:
  - 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 3. Enclosure Type: Open, dripproof.
  - 4. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
  - 5. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - 6. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

## 2.4 COILS

- A. General Requirements for Coils:
  - 1. Comply with AHRI 410.
  - 2. Fabricate coils section to allow for removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
  - 3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
- B. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Tubes: Copper.
  - 2. Fins:
    - a. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
  - 4. Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
  - 5. Frames: Galvanized steel.
  - 6. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
    - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.
- C. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Tubes: Copper.
  - 2. Fins:

- a. Material: Aluminum.
- 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
- 4. Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
- 5. Frames: Galvanized steel.
- 6. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
  - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.

D. Hot-Gas Reheat Refrigerant Coil:

- 1. Tubes: Copper.
- 2. Fins:
  - a. Material: Aluminum.
- 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
- 4. Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
- 5. Frames: Galvanized steel.
- 6. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
  - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.
- 7. Suction-discharge bypass valve.

## 2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Compressor: Hermetic, variable-speed scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.
- B. Refrigeration Specialties:
  - 1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
  - 2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  - 3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
  - 4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
  - 5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
  - 6. Minimum off-time relay.
  - 7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
  - 8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.
  - 9. Four-way reversing valve with a replaceable magnetic coil, thermostatic expansion valves with bypass check valves, and a suction line accumulator.

## 2.6 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Particulate air filtration is specified in Section 234100 "Particulate Air Filtration."
- B. Panel Filters:
  - 1. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported, disposable air filters with holding frames.
  - 2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
  - 3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
  - 4. Filter-Media Frame: Beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.

## 2.7 GAS FURNACES

- A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3 and NFPA 54.
- B. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.
- C. Burners: Stainless steel.
  - 1. Fuel: Natural gas.
  - 2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
  - 3. Gas Control Valve: Modulating.
  - 4. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.
- D. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.
- E. Venting, Power: Power vented, with integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve.



- F. Safety Controls:
  - 1. Gas Manifold: Safety switches and controls complying with ANSI standards.

## 2.8 DAMPERS

- A. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in parallel-blade arrangement with zinc-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg.
- B. Electronic Damper Operators:
  - 1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
  - 2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
  - 3. Operator Motors:
    - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - b. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
    - c. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
  - 4. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:
    - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - b. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - c. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
    - d. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
  - 5. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
  - 6. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
  - 7. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
  - 8. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24 V dc.
  - 9. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24 V ac or 8 W at 24 V dc.
  - 10. Proportional Signal: 2 to 10 V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
  - 11. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
  - 12. Run Time: 12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed.

## 2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU shall have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

## 2.10 CONTROLS

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
- B. DDC Controller:
  - 1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
  - 2. Refer to drawings for requirements for unit sequence of operation.
- C. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:
  - 1. Provide BACnet compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
    - a. Adjusting set points.
    - b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
    - c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity.
    - d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
    - e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
    - f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
    - g. Monitoring cooling load.

- h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
- i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

## 2.11 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof curbs with vibration isolators and wind or seismic restraints are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
  - 1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    - a. Materials: ASTM C1071, Type I or II.
    - b. Thickness: 1-1/2 inches.
  - 2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
    - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.
    - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
    - c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have airstream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
    - d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.
- C. Curb Dimensions: Height of 24 inches.

## 2.12 ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.
- B. Factory- or field-installed, demand-controlled ventilation.
- C. Safeties:
  - 1. Smoke detector.
  - 2. Condensate overflow switch.
  - 3. High and low pressure control.
  - 4. Gas furnace airflow-proving switch.
- D. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.
- E. Outdoor-air intake weather hood.

## 2.13 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
  - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
  - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
  - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

## 2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
  - 2. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
  - 3. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.

4. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.
- B. AMCA Compliance:
1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
  2. Damper leakage tested according to AMCA 500-D.
  3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- B. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.

### 3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTU, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to unit mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using minimum 1" NPS 1-1/4, ASTM B88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or roof drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

### 3.3 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  2. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

**END OF SECTION 237416.11**

## **SECTION 237416.13 - PACKAGED, LARGE-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes packaged, large-capacity (greater than 20-ton), rooftop air conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components:
  - 1. Casings.
  - 2. Fans, drives, and motors.
  - 3. Coils.
  - 4. Refrigerant circuit components.
  - 5. Air filtration.
  - 6. Gas furnaces.
  - 7. Dampers.
  - 8. Electrical power connections.
  - 9. Controls.
  - 10. Roof curbs.
  - 11. Accessories.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of RTU.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each packaged, large-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. System startup reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace (parts and labor) components of outdoor, semi-custom, air-handling unit that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion
  - 3. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Trane.
2. Aeon.
3. Daikin Applied.
4. Lennox.

## 2.2 UNIT CASINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.
- B. Double-Wall Construction:
  1. Outside Casing Wall: Galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge thick with manufacturer's standard finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
  2. Inside Casing Wall: G90-coated galvanized steel, minimum 0.028 inch thick.
  3. Floor Plate: G90 galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge thick.
  4. Casing Insulation:
    - a. Materials: Injected polyurethane foam insulation.
    - b. Insulation Thickness: 1 inch.
    - c. Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing walls, floors, or roof of unit.
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Static-Pressure Classifications:
  1. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 3-inch wg.
  2. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 4-inch wg.
- E. Panels and Doors:
  1. Access Doors:
    - a. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever-type latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against air-pressure differential.
    - b. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    - c. Size: Large enough to allow inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components.
  2. Locations and Applications:
    - a. Fan Section: Doors.
    - b. Access Section: Doors.
    - c. Coil Section: Doors.
    - d. Damper Section: Doors.
    - e. Filter Section: Doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
    - f. Mixing Section: Doors.
- F. Condensate Drain Pans:
  1. Location: Each type of cooling coil.
  2. Construction:
    - a. Single-wall, stainless steel sheet.
  3. Drain Connection:
    - a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
    - b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1.
  4. Slope: Minimum 0.125-in./ft. slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
  5. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face for distance to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
  6. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
  7. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
  8. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

## 2.3 FANS, DRIVES, AND MOTORS

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.

- B. Supply-Air Fans: Centrifugal, plenum, rated according to AMCA 210; galvanized or painted steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
  - 1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
    - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
  - 2. Shaft Bearings:
    - a. Heavy-duty, self-aligning, pillow-block type with an L-50 rated life of minimum 100,000 hours according to ABMA 9.
  - 3. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
    - a. Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
  - 4. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard restrained vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch.
  - 5. Shaft Lubrication Lines: Extended to a location outside the casing.
  - 6. Flexible Connector: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip minimum 3-1/2 inches wide, attached to two strips of minimum 2-3/4-inch-wide by 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet.
    - a. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric, double coated with neoprene. Fabrics, coatings, and adhesives shall comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Drives, Direct: Factory-mounted, direct drive.
- D. Condenser-Coil Fan: Variable-speed propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motors.
- E. Relief-Air Fan: Forward curved, shaft mounted on **permanently lubricated** motor.
- F. Motors:
  - 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 3. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
  - 4. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
  - 5. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - 6. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

## 2.4 COILS

- A. General Requirements for Coils:
  - 1. Comply with AHRI 410.
  - 2. Fabricate coils section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
  - 3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.
- B. Supply-Air Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Tubes: Copper.
  - 2. Fins:
    - a. Material: Aluminum.
    - b. Fin Spacing: Maximum 12 fins per inch.
  - 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
  - 4. Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
  - 5. Frames: Galvanized steel.
  - 6. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
    - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.
- C. Outdoor-Air Refrigerant Coil:
  - 1. Tubes: Copper.
  - 2. Fins:
    - a. Material: Aluminum.
  - 3. Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
  - 4. Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
  - 5. Frames: Galvanized steel.
  - 6. Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
    - a. Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.

## 2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Compressor: Hermetic, variable speed scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief, and crankcase heater.
- B. Refrigeration Specialties:
  - 1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
  - 2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  - 3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
  - 4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
  - 5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
  - 6. Minimum off-time relay.
  - 7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
  - 8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

## 2.6 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Panel Filters:
  - 1. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported, disposable air filters with holding frames.
  - 2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
  - 3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
  - 4. Filter-Media Frame: Beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.

## 2.7 GAS FURNACES

- A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3 and NFPA 54.
- B. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.
- C. Burners: Stainless steel.
  - 1. Fuel: Natural gas.
  - 2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
  - 3. Gas Control Valve: Modulating.
  - 4. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.
- D. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.
- E. Venting, Power: Power vented, with integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve.
- F. Safety Controls:
  - 1. Gas Manifold: Safety switches and controls complying with ANSI standards.

## 2.8 DAMPERS

- A. Dampers: Comply with requirements in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
- B. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in parallel-blade arrangement with zinc-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg
- C. Barometric relief dampers.
- D. Electronic Damper Operators:
  - 1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
  - 2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
  - 3. Operator Motors:



- a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - b. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
  - c. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
- 4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
- 5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
- 6. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:
  - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
  - b. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
  - c. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
  - d. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
- 7. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
- 8. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
- 9. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
- 10. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24 V dc.
- 11. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24 V ac or 8 W at 24 V dc.
- 12. Proportional Signal: 2 to 10 V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
- 13. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
- 14. Run Time: 12 seconds open, 5 seconds closed.

## 2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU shall have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

## 2.10 CONTROLS

- A. DDC Controller:
  - 1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
  - 2. Refer to drawings for requirements for unit sequence of operation.
- B. Interface Requirements for HVAC Instrumentation and Control System:
  - 1. Provide BACnet compatible interface for central HVAC control workstation for the following:
    - a. Adjusting set points.
    - b. Monitoring supply fan start, stop, and operation.
    - c. Inquiring data to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature and humidity.
    - d. Monitoring occupied and unoccupied operations.
    - e. Monitoring constant and variable motor loads.
    - f. Monitoring variable-frequency drive operation.
    - g. Monitoring cooling load.
    - h. Monitoring economizer cycles.
    - i. Monitoring air-distribution static pressure and ventilation air volume.

## 2.11 ROOF CURBS

- A. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
  - 1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
    - a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
    - b. Thickness: 2 inches.
  - 2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
    - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.
    - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.

- c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
- d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.

B. Curb Dimensions: Height of 24 inches.

## 2.12 ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.
- B. Factory- or field-installed demand-controlled ventilation.
- C. Safeties:
  - 1. Smoke detector.
  - 2. High and low pressure control.
  - 3. Gas furnace airflow-proving switch.
- D. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.
- E. Outdoor air intake weather hood with moisture eliminator.

## 2.13 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
  - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
  - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
- B. Stainless Steel:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
  - 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.
- E. Comply with Section 230546 "Coatings for HVAC" for corrosion-resistant coating.
- F. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 3000-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B117.
  - 1. Standards:
    - a. ASTM B117 for salt spray.
    - b. ASTM D2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb.
    - c. ASTM B3359 for cross-hatch adhesion of 5B.
  - 2. Application: Spray.
  - 3. Thickness: 1 mil.
  - 4. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 60 on a 60-degree meter.

## 2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with AHRI 340/360 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
  - 2. Comply with AHRI 210/240 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
  - 3. Comply with AHRI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
  - 4. Comply with AHRI 1060 for testing and rating performance for air-to-air exchanger.
- B. AMCA Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal for air and sound performance according to AMCA 211 and AMCA 311.
  - 2. Damper leakage tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D.
  - 3. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- B. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.

### 3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTU, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to unit mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using minimum 1" NPS 1-1/4, ASTM B88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest roof drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.

### 3.3 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

### 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

**END OF SECTION 237416.13**

## **SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
  - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
  - 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

#### **1.6 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period:
    - a. For Compressor: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. For Parts: One year from date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. For Labor: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Daikin.
  - 2. LG.
  - 3. Mitsubishi.
  - 4. Trane

#### **2.2 INDOOR UNITS 5 TONS OR LESS**

- A. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
  2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
  3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
  4. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
  5. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
  6. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
  7. Fan Motors:
    - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
    - c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
  8. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
  9. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
  10. Condensate Drain Pans:
    - a. Fabricated with one percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
      - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1
      - 2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
    - b. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
    - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
      - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1
    - d. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.
- B. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:
1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
  2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
  3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
  4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
  5. Fan Motors:
    - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
    - c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
    - d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
    - e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
    - f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior
    - g. ASHRAE compliance in "Airstream Surfaces" Subparagraph below may be required to comply with Project requirements or authorities having jurisdiction. Retain first subparagraph to comply with LEED Prerequisite IEQ 1.
  6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
  7. Condensate Drain Pans:
    - a. Fabricated with two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
      - 1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1
      - 2) Depth: A minimum of 1"
    - b. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
    - c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on both ends of pan.
      - 1) Minimum Connection Size: NPS 1
    - d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.

8. Air Filtration Section:
  - a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
    - 1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
    - 2) Minimum Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.1 and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
    - 3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
  - b. Disposable Panel Filters:
    - 1) Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
    - 2) Thickness: 1 inch

## 2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS 5 TONS OR LESS

- A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:
  1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
  2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
    - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
    - b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
    - c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A
    - d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
  3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
  4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
  5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
  6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F
  7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence and Operations for HVAC Controls."
- B. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.
- C. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:
  1. Compressor time delay.
  2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
  3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
  4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.
- D. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- E. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- F. Drain Hose: For condensate.
- G. Additional Monitoring:
  1. Monitor constant and variable motor loads.
  2. Monitor variable-frequency-drive operation.
  3. Monitor economizer cycle.
  4. Monitor cooling load.
  5. Monitor air distribution static pressure and ventilation air volumes.

## 2.5 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Cooling Capacity: As noted on drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on polyethylene mounting base.
  - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
  - 1. Water Coil Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."Section 15179 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Connect hydronic piping to supply and return coil connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
  - 2. Remote, Water-Cooled Condenser Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."Section 15179 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Connect hydronic piping to supply and return connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.
- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

## END OF SECTION 238126



## SECTION 238239 - CABINET UNIT HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cabinet unit heaters with centrifugal fans and hot-water coils.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include location and size of each field connection.
  - 4. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 5. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  - 6. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
  - 7. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls.
  - 8. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 2. Structural members to which cabinet unit heaters will be attached.
  - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
  - 6. Perimeter moldings for exposed or partially exposed cabinets.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Trane Inc.
  - 2. Qmark
  - 3. Raywall

#### 2.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with AHRI 440.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

## 2.4 COIL SECTION INSULATION

- A. Insulation Materials: ASTM C 1071; surfaces exposed to airstream shall have aluminum-foil facing to prevent erosion of glass fibers.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch
  - 2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  - 3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  - 4. Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916 and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  - 5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

## 2.5 CABINETS

- A. Material: Steel with baked-enamel finish with manufacturer's standard paint, in color selected by Architect.
  - 1. Vertical Unit, Exposed Front Panels: Minimum 0.0677-inch thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels with channel-formed edges secured with tamperproof cam fasteners.
  - 2. Horizontal Unit, Exposed Bottom Panels: Minimum 0.0677-inch thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels secured with tamperproof cam fasteners and safety chain.
  - 3. Recessed Flanges: Steel, finished to match cabinet.
  - 4. Control Access Door: Key operated.
  - 5. Base: Minimum 0.0677-inch thick steel, finished to match cabinet, 4 high with leveling bolts.
  - 6. Extended Piping Compartment: 8-inch wide piping end pocket.
  - 7. False Back: Minimum 0.0428-inch thick steel, finished to match cabinet.

## 2.6 HEATING COIL

- A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in steel or corrosion-resistant metallic sheath with fins no closer than 0.16 inch. Element ends shall be enclosed in terminal box. Fin surface temperature shall not exceed 550 deg F at any point during normal operation.
  - 1. Circuit Protection: One-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for high-temperature protection of heaters.
  - 2. Wiring Terminations: Stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant material.

## 2.7 CONTROLS

- A. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.
  - 1. Fan: Forward curved, high static, double width, centrifugal, directly connected to motor; thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
  - 2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
- C. Basic Unit Controls:
  - 1. Control voltage transformer.
  - 2. Wall mounted thermostat with the following features:
    - a. Heat-off switch.
    - b. Fan on-auto switch.
    - c. Manual fan-speed switch.
    - d. Adjustable deadband.
    - e. Concealed set point.
    - f. Concealed indication.

- B. Electrical Connection: Factory-wired motors and controls for a single field connection.

## 2.8 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. As scheduled on drawings.

## 2.9 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive cabinet unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 2.10 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- B. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Suspend cabinet unit heaters from structure with elastomeric hangers.
- D. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.
- E. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

## 2.11 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping," Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect supply and return ducts to cabinet unit heaters with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- D. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of cabinet unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping".
- F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## 2.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## END OF SECTION 238239.13



## **SECTION 260500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - 2. Sleeve seals.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Common electrical installation requirements.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES**

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

#### **2.2 SLEEVE SEALS**

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Plastic. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

#### **2.3 GROUT**

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.

- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

### 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

**END OF SECTION 260500**





## **SECTION 260519 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
  - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
  - 3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

- A. Aluminum and Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- B. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THHN-THWN.
- C. Metal-clad Cable, Type MC:
  - 1. Type MC cable shall be U.L. listed. MC cable materials, marking, installation methods and permitted usage shall comply with Article 334 of the N.E.C. and with these specifications.
  - 2. All type MC cables shall contain conductors suitable for the application.
  - 3. All type MC cables shall contain a separate insulated green grounding conductor along with the current carrying conductors sized in accordance with the NEC.

#### **2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  - 3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
  - 4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
  - 5. Tyco Electronics Corp.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

#### **2.3 SLEEVES FOR CABLES**

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

## 2.4 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Calpico, Inc.
  - 3. Metraflex Co.
  - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Plastic. Include two for each sealing element.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 1 AWG; copper or 8000 series aluminum alloy for feeders No. 1 AWG and larger. (Use of aluminum alloy conductors on feeders shall be submitted as a bid alternate). Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions:
  - 1. Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway or metal-clad cable, type MC.
    - a. Type MC cable may be used in lieu of single conductors in raceway only for branch circuits (with up to four conductors not including ground conductor) and only in dry concealed locations above grade except where specifically not permitted by the NEC or this specification.
    - b. Type MC cable shall **not** be permitted for the following uses:
      - 1) Concealed within walls and partitions (MC cable allowed only above ceilings).
      - 2) Connections to panelboards (MC cable can terminate in a wireway gutter located above the panel, and above the accessible ceiling).
      - 3) Where exposed to view.
      - 4) Where exposed to damage.
      - 5) Hazardous locations.
      - 6) Wet locations.
    - c. UL listed connectors with insulated bushings and offset screw connections shall be utilized for MC cable installations.
    - d. Type MC cable shall be supported and secured within twelve (12) inches of every outlet box or fitting.
    - e. Type MC cable whips may be utilized in lieu of flexible conduit and wire for wiring from light fixtures in accessible ceilings to junction boxes above ceiling. Cable whip lengths shall be sufficient to allow for relocating each light fixture within a five (5) foot radius of its installed location.
- E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- G. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.

- H. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- F. Support and secure type MC cable within twelve (12) inches of every outlet box or fitting.
- G. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- H. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- I. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

### END OF SECTION 260519



## **SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. UTP cabling.
  - 2. RS-232 cabling.
  - 3. RS-485 cabling.
  - 4. Low-voltage control cabling.
  - 5. Control-circuit conductors.
  - 6. Identification products.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Maintenance data.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of an NRTL.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
- B. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PATHWAYS**

- A. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
  - 1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - 2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  - 3. Straps and other devices.
- B. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
  - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.

## 2.2 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

- A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
  - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
  - 2. PVC insulation.
  - 3. Unshielded.
  - 4. PVC jacket.
  - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
  - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
  - 2. PVC insulation.
  - 3. Unshielded.
  - 4. PVC jacket.
  - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- C. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
  - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
  - 2. PVC insulation.
  - 3. Unshielded.
  - 4. PVC jacket.
  - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- D. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
  - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
  - 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
  - 3. Unshielded.
  - 4. Plastic jacket.
  - 5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

## 2.3 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, complying with UL 83.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, complying with UL 83.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83.

## 2.4 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. HellermannTyton.
  - 3. Kroy LLC.
  - 4. Panduit Corp.
- B. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
  - 1. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Open-Cable Installation:
  - 1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
  - 2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
  - 3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

### 3.3 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables.

### 3.4 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
  - 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No 14 AWG.
  - 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
  - 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits, No 12 AWG.

### 3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.6 GROUNDING

- A. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### END OF SECTION 260523





## **SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 CONDUCTORS**

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **2.2 CONNECTORS**

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
  - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

#### **2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES**

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch nominal diameter by 10 feet in length.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 APPLICATIONS**

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
- C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Lighting circuits.
  - 3. Receptacle circuits.
  - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
  - 8. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
- B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- C. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Grounding bus riser as indicated on Drawings.
- E. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
  - 2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- D. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
  - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
  - 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
  - 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

- E. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

**END OF SECTION 260526**



## **SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
  - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

#### **1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For steel slotted support systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
  - 2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
  - 3. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS**

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. GS Metals Corp.
    - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
    - g. Wesanco, Inc.
  - 3. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 4. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 5. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  - 6. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

- B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
  - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Hilti Inc.
      - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
      - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.
  - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
    - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      - 3) Hilti Inc.
      - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
  - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  - 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
  - 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
  - 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
  - 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.
  - 5. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 6. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases 6 inches tall and 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base. Furnish and install concrete base at all floor-mounted electrical equipment including panelboards and transformers.
- B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
  - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION 260529**



## **SECTION 260533 - RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.
- B. See Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks and manholes, and underground handholes, boxes, and utility construction.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING**

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- B. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- C. EMT: ANSI C80.3.
- D. FMC: Zinc-coated steel.
- E. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
- F. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
  - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
  - 2. Fittings for EMT: compression type.

#### **2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING**

- A. ENT: NEMA TC 13.
- B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. LFNC: UL 1660.
- D. Fittings for ENT and RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- E. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

#### **2.3 METAL WIREWAYS**

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
2. Hoffman.
3. Square D; Schneider Electric.

- B. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

## 2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Hoffman.
  2. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
- C. Description: PVC plastic, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with snap-on cover and mechanically coupled connections with plastic fasteners.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

## 2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- B. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- C. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 2.
- D. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast metal, fully adjustable, rectangular.
- E. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.
- F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- G. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- H. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
- I. Cabinets:
  1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
  3. Key latch to match panelboards.
  4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
  5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, direct buried.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit. Includes raceways in the following locations:
  - a. Loading dock.
4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT or metal-clad cable, type MC.
  - a. EMT or metal-clad cable, type MC.
    - 1) Type MC cable may be used in lieu of EMT conduit only for branch circuits (with up to four conductors not including ground conductor) and only in dry concealed locations above grade except where specifically not permitted by the NEC or this specification.
      - a) Type MC cable shall **not** be permitted for the following uses:
        1. Concealed within walls and partitions (MC cable allowed only above ceilings).
        2. Connections to panelboards (MC cable can terminate in a wireway gutter located above the panel, and above the accessible ceiling).
        3. Where exposed to view.
        4. Where exposed to damage.
        5. Hazardous locations.
        6. Wet locations.
      - b) UL listed connectors with insulated bushings and offset screw connections shall be utilized for MC cable installations.
      - c) Type MC cable shall be supported and secured within twelve (12) inches of every outlet box or fitting.
      - d) Type MC cable whips may be utilized in lieu of flexible conduit and wire for wiring from light fixtures in accessible ceilings to junction boxes above ceiling. Cable whip lengths shall be sufficient to allow for relocating each light fixture within a five (5) foot radius of its installed location.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit.
7. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
8. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
- F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.

- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
  - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  - 3. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, rigid steel conduit, or IMC before rising above the floor.
- I. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- J. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.
- K. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install as follows:
  - 1. 3/4-Inch Trade Size: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet.
  - 2. 1-Inch Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet.
  - 3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- L. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- M. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
  - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  - 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- N. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.
- O. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- P. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
  - 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
  - 2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  - 3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  - 4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
    - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.
    - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

#### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

**END OF SECTION 260533**



## **SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Identification of power and control cables.
  - 2. Identification for conductors.
  - 3. Underground-line warning tape.
  - 4. Warning labels and signs.
  - 5. Instruction signs.
  - 6. Equipment identification labels.
  - 7. Miscellaneous identification products.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS**

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

#### **2.2 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS**

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

#### **2.3 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS**

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
  - 1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
  - 2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.

3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.

D. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."

## 2.4 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- B. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- C. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- D. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
    - a. Color shall be factory applied.
    - b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
      - 1) Phase A: Black.
      - 2) Phase B: Red.
      - 3) Phase C: Blue.
    - c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
      - 1) Phase A: Brown.
      - 2) Phase B: Orange.
      - 3) Phase C: Yellow.
    - d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- B. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.
- C. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
1. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
    - a. Tape shall be red in color, 6" wide & 4 mils thick, alkali & acid resistant with metallic core.



- D. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels.
  - 1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
  - 2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
  - 3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  - 4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- E. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
- F. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
  - 1. Labeling Instructions:
    - a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
    - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
    - d. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.

**END OF SECTION 260553**



## **SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Time switches.
  - 2. Photoelectric switches.
  - 3. Standalone daylight-harvesting controls.
  - 4. Indoor occupancy sensors.
  - 5. Lighting contactors.
  - 6. Emergency shunt relays.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.
  - 1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### **1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 TIME SWITCHES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Intermatic, Inc.
  - 3. Invensys Controls.
  - 4. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - 5. NSi Industries LLC.
  - 6. Tyco Electronics.
- B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
  - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Contact Configuration: SPST.
  - 3. Contact Rating: 20-A ballast load, 120-/240-V ac.
  - 4. Programs: Two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
  - 5. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program on selected channels.
  - 6. Astronomic Time: All channels.
  - 7. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
  - 8. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

#### **2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Intermatic, Inc.
  - 3. NSi Industries LLC.
  - 4. Tyco Electronics.
- B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800-VA tungsten or 1000-VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
3. Time Delay: Fifteen second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.

## 2.3 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING DIMMING CONTROLS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  2. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
  3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  4. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  5. Watt Stopper.
- B. System Description: Sensing daylight and electrical lighting levels, the system adjusts the indoor electrical lighting levels. As daylight increases, the lights are dimmed.
  1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:
    - a. When no daylight is present (target level).
    - b. When significant daylight is present.
  2. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.
    - a. Initial setup tool.
    - b. Tool for occupants to adjust the target levels by increasing the set point up to 25 percent, or by minimizing the electric lighting level.
- C. Ceiling-Mounted Dimming Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate controller unit, to detect changes in lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
  1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Sensor Output: 0- to 10-V dc to operate electronic dimming ballasts. Sensor is powered by controller unit.
  3. Power Pack: Sensor has 24-V dc, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
  4. Light-Level Sensor Set-Point Adjustment Range: 20 to 60 fc.

## 2.4 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  2. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
  3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  4. Lightolier Controls.
  5. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  6. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
  7. Sensor Switch, Inc.
  8. Square D.
  9. Watt Stopper.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Wall- or ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.
  1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 30 minutes.
  3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
  4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
  5. Mounting:
    - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
- C. PIR Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
    1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
  - D. Ultrasonic Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy .
    1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
  - E. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
    1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
    2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.

## 2.5 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  2. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.
  3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  4. Lightolier Controls.
  5. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  6. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
  7. Sensor Switch, Inc.
  8. Square D.
  9. Watt Stopper.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.
  1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
  3. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA fluorescent at 120 V, 1200-VA fluorescent at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.

## 2.6 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
  2. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; a business of Emerson Network Power.
  3. Eaton Corporation.
  4. General Electric Company.
  5. Square D.
- B. Description: Electrically operated and electrically held, combination-type lighting contactors with nonfused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
  1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
  2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
  3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
  4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.
- C. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Provide hardware interface to enable the DDC system for HVAC to monitor and control lighting contactors.
  1. Monitoring: On-off status.
  2. Control: On-off operation.

## 2.7 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Lighting Control and Design.
  - 2. Watt Stopper.
- B. Description: Normally closed, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual or automatic switching contacts; complying with UL 924.
  - 1. Coil Rating: 120 or 277 V.

## 2.8 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG.
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG.
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Minimum conduit size is 3/4 inch.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring.
  - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
  - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

**END OF SECTION 260923**





## **SECTION 260943 - RELAY-BASED LIGHTING CONTROLS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes: Lighting control panels using mechanically held relays for switching.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. BAS: Building automation system.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. IP: Internet protocol.
- D. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for control modules, power distribution components, relays, manual switches and plates, and conductors and cables.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Operational documentation for software and firmware.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each relay panel and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 3. Detail wiring partition configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - 4. Short-circuit current rating of relays.
  - 5. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with Drawings and block diagram. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
  - 6. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Software licenses and upgrades required by and installed for operation and programming of digital and analog devices.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

#### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting controls to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
  - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  - 2. Program Software Backup: On USB drive.
  - 3. Device address list.
  - 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
  - 5. Testing and adjusting of panic and emergency power features.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Lighting Control Relays: Equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 10.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle and prepare panels for installation according to NECA 407.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of standalone multipreset modular dimming controls that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Damage from transient voltage surges.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Cost to repair or replace any parts for two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Sequence of Operations: Input signal from field-mounted manual switches, or digital signal sources, shall open or close one or more lighting control relays in the lighting control panels. Any combination of inputs shall be programmable to any number of control relays.
- B. Interface with HVAC DDC System: Hardware and software shall interface with HVAC DDC system to monitor, control, display, and record data for use in processing reports.
  - 1. Hardwired Points:
    - a. Monitoring: On-off status.
    - b. Control: On-off operation.
  - 2. Communication Interface: Comply with ASHRAE 135. The communication interface shall enable the HVAC DDC system operator to remotely control and monitor lighting from a HVAC DDC system operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at lighting panel shall be available through the HVAC DDC system.
- C. Surge Protective Device: Factory installed as an integral part of control components or field-mounted surge suppressors complying with UL 1449, SPD Type 2.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with 47 CFR 15, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.
- F. Comply with UL 916.

### 2.2 NETWORKED LIGHTING CONTROL PANELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Crestron.
  - 2. Wattstopper.
  - 3. Lithonia, Acuity Brands Lighting.
- B. Description: Lighting control panels using mechanically latched relays to control lighting and appliances. The panels shall be capable of being interconnected with digital communications to appear to the operator as a single lighting control system.
- C. Lighting Control Panels:
  - 1. A single enclosure with incoming lighting branch circuits, control circuits, switching relays, and on-board timing and control unit.
  - 2. A vertical barrier separating branch circuits from control wiring.

- D. Main Control Unit: Installed in the main lighting control panel only; powered from the branch circuit of the standard control unit.
1. Ethernet Communications: Comply with TCP/IP protocol. The main control unit shall provide for programming of all control functions of the main and all networked slave lighting control panels including timing, sequencing, and overriding.
  2. Compliance with ASHRAE 135: Controllers shall support serial MS/TP and Ethernet IP communications, and shall be able to communicate directly via DDC system for HVAC RS-485 serial networks and Ethernet 10Base-T networks as a native device.
  3. Web Server: Display information listed below over a standard Web-enabled server for displaying information over a standard browser.
    - a. A secure, password-protected login screen for modifying operational parameters, accessible to authorized users via Web page interface.
    - b. Panel summary showing the master and slave panels connected to the controller.
    - c. Controller diagnostic information.
    - d. Show front panel mimic screens for setting up controller parameters, input types, zones, and operating schedules. These mimic screens shall also allow direct breaker control and zone overrides.
  4. Timing Unit:
    - a. 365-day calendar, astronomical clock, and automatic adjustments for daylight savings and leap year.
    - b. Clock configurable for 12-hour (A.M./P.M.) or 24-hour format.
    - c. Four independent schedules, each having 24 time periods.
    - d. Schedule periods settable to the minute.
    - e. Day-of-week, day-of-month, day-of-year with one-time or repeating capability.
    - f. 16 special date periods.
  5. Time Synchronization: The timing unit shall be updated not less than every 24 hour(s) with the network time server.
  6. Sequencing Control with Override:
    - a. Automatic sequenced on and off switching of selected relays at times set at the timing unit, allowing timed overrides from external switches.
    - b. Sequencing control shall operate relays one at a time, completing the operation of all connected relays in not more than 10 seconds.
    - c. Override control shall allow any relay connected to it to be switched on or off by a field-deployed manual switch or by an automatic switch, such as an occupancy sensor.
    - d. Override control "blinking warning" shall warn occupants approximately five minutes before actuating the off sequence.
    - e. Activity log, storing previous relay operation, including the time and cause of the change of status.
    - f. Download firmware to the latest version offered by manufacturer.
- E. Standard Control Unit, Installed in All Lighting Control Panels: Contain electronic controls for programming the operation of the relays in the control panel, contain the status of relays, and contain communications link to enable the digital functions of the main control unit. Comply with UL 916.
1. Electronic control for operating and monitoring individual relays, and display relay on-time.
  2. Nonvolatile memory shall retain all setup configurations. After a power failure, the controller shall automatically reboot and return to normal system operation.
  3. Integral keypad and digital-display front panel for local setup, including the following:
    - a. Blink notice, time adjustable from software.
    - b. Ability to log and display relay on-time.
    - c. Capability for accepting downloadable firmware so that the latest production features may be added in the future without replacing the module.
- F. Relays: Electrically operated, mechanically held single-pole switch, rated at 20 A at 120-V tungsten, 30 A at 277-V ballast, 1.5 hp at 120 V, and 3 hp at 277 V. Short-circuit current rating shall be not less than 14 kA. Control shall be digital control network.
- G. Power Supply: NFPA 70, Class 2, UL listed, sized for connected equipment, plus not less than 20 percent spare capacity. Powered from a dedicated branch circuit of the panelboard that supplies power to the line side of the relays, sized to provide control power for the local panel-mounted relays, bus system, low-voltage inputs, field-installed occupancy sensors, and low-voltage photo sensors.
- H. Operator Interface: At the main control unit, provide interface for a tethered connection of a portable PC running MS Windows for configuring all networked lighting control panels using setup software designed for the specified operating system. Include one portable device for initial programming of the system and training of Owner's personnel. That device shall remain the property of Owner.
- I. Software:

1. Menu-driven data entry.
2. Online and offline programming and editing.
3. Provide for entry of the room or space designation for the load side of each relay.
4. Monitor and control all relays, showing actual relay state and the name of the automatic actuating control, if any.
5. Size the software appropriate to the system.

## 2.3 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES

- A. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary contact, three wire, for operating one or more relays and to override automatic controls.
  1. Integral LED pilot light to indicate when circuit is on.
- B. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates.
- C. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 FIELD-MOUNTED SIGNAL SOURCES

- A. Daylight Harvesting Switching Controls: Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.
- B. Indoor Occupancy Sensors: Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.

## 2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Class 2 Power Source: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG.
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG.
- C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG.
- D. Digital and Multiplexed Signal Cables: Unshielded, twisted-pair cable with copper conductors. Comply with requirements in TIA/EIA-568-C.2, Category 6 for horizontal copper cable.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panels according to NECA 407.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panels for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
- C. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

### 3.3 PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install panels and accessories according to NECA 407.
- C. Mount panel cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- D. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.
- B. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
- C. Create a directory to indicate loads served by each relay; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a PC to create directory; handwritten directories are unacceptable.
- D. Lighting Control Panel Nameplates: Label each panel with a nameplate.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers described below and low-voltage surge arrestors. Certify compliance with manufacturer's test parameters.
    - a. Circuit-Breaker Tests:
      - 1) Compare nameplate with Drawings and Specifications.
      - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical conditions.
      - 3) Inspect anchorage and alignment.
      - 4) Verify that the units are clean.
      - 5) Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
      - 6) Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and arc chutes in unsealed units.
      - 7) Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators, zone interlocking, electrical close and trip operation, trip-free, anti-pump function, and trip unit battery condition. Reset trip logs and indicators.
    - b. Surge Arrestor Tests:
      - 1) Compare nameplate with the Contract Documents.
      - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical conditions.
      - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
      - 4) Verify that the units are clean.
      - 5) Verify that the ground lead on each device is individually attached to a ground bus or ground electrode.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Lighting control panel will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies lighting control panels and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Confirm correct communications wiring, initiate communications between panels, and program the lighting control system according to approved configuration schedules, time-of-day schedules, and input override assignments.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the control unit and operator interface.

### END OF SECTION 260943

## **SECTION 262200 - TRANSFORMERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following types of dry-type transformers rated 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1000 kVA:
  - 1. Distribution transformers.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer indicated.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### **1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with IEEE C57.12.91, "Test Code for Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers."

#### **1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.

#### **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.
- B. Coordinate installation of wall-mounting and structure-hanging supports with actual transformer provided.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
  - 2. Square D; Schneider Electric.
  - 3. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management – Electrical Distribution.
  - 4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.

#### **2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.
- B. Cores: Grain-oriented, non-aging silicon steel.

- C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.
  - 1. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
  - 2. Coil Material: Copper.

## 2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

- A. Comply with NEMA ST 20, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.
- B. Provide transformers that are constructed to withstand seismic forces specified in Division 16 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- C. Cores: One leg per phase.
- D. Enclosure: Ventilated, NEMA 250, Type 2.
  - 1. Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound, sealing out moisture and air.
- E. Transformer Enclosure Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.
- F. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and two 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.
- G. Insulation Class: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 150 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.
- H. Wall Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets.
- I. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for coil and core.
- J. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Minimum of 3 dBA less than NEMA ST 20 standard sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91.

## 2.4 IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-plastic or metal nameplate for each distribution transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

## 2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.91.
- B. Factory Sound-Level Tests: Conduct sound-level tests on equipment for this Project.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.
- D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding" have been met.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-mounting transformers level and plumb with wall brackets fabricated by transformer manufacturer.
  - 1. Brace wall-mounting transformers as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- B. Construct concrete bases and anchor floor-mounting transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions and requirements in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- C. Vibration Isolation as follows:
  - 1. Less than 75kVA: Neoprene isolators, minimum deflection of 0.15-inch.
  - 2. 75kVA up to 225kVA: Neoprene or spring isolators, minimum deflection of 0.25-inch.
  - 3. 225kVA and above: Spring isolators, minimum deflection of 0.50-inch with steel rail frame.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Conductors and Cables."

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 10 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

**END OF SECTION 262200**



## SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes distribution panelboards and lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  - 5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - 6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  - 7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Panelboard schedules for installation in panelboards.
- E. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
    - c. Kitchen and Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
    - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - 2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
  - 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.

- 4. Directory Card: Typed schedule depicting “as-built” circuit descriptions, inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
- C. Incoming Mains Location: Top or bottom as required by project conditions.
- D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- E. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- G. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

## 2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
  - 3. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management – Electrical Distribution.
  - 4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: For Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.

## 2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
  - 3. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management – Electrical Distribution.
  - 4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

## 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
  - 2. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
  - 3. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management – Electrical Distribution.
  - 4. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  - 3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
    - a. Instantaneous trip.
    - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.

- c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
- 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- 6. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- 7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.

## 2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, store and install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- B. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- D. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- E. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- F. Stub two 2-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub two 2-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade (where applicable).
- G. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.
- H. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads and incorporating Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

**END OF SECTION 262416**

## **SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
  - 2. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
  - 3. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES**

- A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
  - 1. Products: Leviton is basis of design. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
    - b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
    - c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).
- B. Tamper resistant Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; TRBR20 (duplex).
    - b. Hubbell; BR20 (duplex).
    - c. Leviton; TBR20 (duplex).
    - d. Pass & Seymour; TR20 (duplex).

#### **2.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES**

- A. General Description: Straight blade, feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.
- B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
  - 1. Products: Leviton is basis of design. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Cooper; GF20.
    - b. Hubbell; GFRST20.
    - c. Leviton; 7899.
    - d. Pass & Seymour; 2084).

#### **2.3 SNAP SWITCHES**

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).
  - b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
  - c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
  - d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).

2.4 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

- A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
- B. Control: Continuously adjustable toggle switch; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.
- C. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
  1. Dimmers shall be rated for load served. Coordinate with specific applications indicated on the Drawings.
- D. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.5 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Provide occupancy sensors as noted on Drawings. Provide all power packs and accessories for a complete and operable lighting control system as required to support sensors and control devices indicated on Drawings.

2.6 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
  1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
  2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch-thick, satin-finished stainless steel.
  3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
  4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.7 FINISHES

- A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.
  1. Back of House, Unfinished: Gray devices, steel plates.
  2. Back of House, Finished: Gray devices, stainless plates.
  3. Public Spaces: Gray devices, stainless plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
  1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
  2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.



- C. Conductors:
1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
  2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
  3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
  4. Existing Conductors:
    - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
  2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
  3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
  4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
  5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
  6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
  7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
  8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
  9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:
1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.
- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
  2. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

**END OF SECTION 262726**



## **SECTION 262813 - FUSES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes: Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in switches and enclosed controllers.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
  - 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
  - 3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
  - 4. Littelfuse, Inc.
  - 5. Pre-approved equal.

#### **2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES**

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 FUSE APPLICATIONS**

- A. Feeders: Class L, time delay or Class J, time delay.
- B. Motor Branch Circuits: Class J, time delay.
- C. Other Branch Circuits: Class J, time delay.

#### **3.2 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

#### **3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block and holder.

## **END OF SECTION 262813**



## **SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following individually mounted, enclosed switches and circuit breakers:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Molded-case circuit breakers.
  - 4. Enclosures.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. GD: General duty.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. HD: Heavy duty.
- D. RMS: Root mean square.
- E. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
  - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
  - 3. Short-circuit current rating.
  - 4. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
  - 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of circuit breaker.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

#### **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with other construction, including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 FUSIBLE AND NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
  2. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
  3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  4. Square D/Group Schneider.
- B. Fusible Switch, 800 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Nonfusible Switch, 800 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, Type HD, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Accessories:
  1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.

### 2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS AND SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products.
  2. General Electric Co.; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
  3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
  4. Square D/Group Schneider.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker: NEMA AB 1, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  2. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with 5 or 30-mA trip sensitivity as indicated on drawings.
- C. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker Features and Accessories:
  1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  2. Lugs: Mechanical style suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  3. Application Listing: Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment.
  4. Ground-Fault Protection: integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
  5. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.

### 2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. NEMA AB 1 and NEMA KS 1 to meet environmental conditions of installed location.
  1. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  2. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 1, NEMA PB 1.1, and NEMA PB 2.1 for installation of enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
- B. Mount individual wall-mounting switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor floor-mounting switches to concrete base.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Enclosure Nameplates: Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate as specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance testing as follows:
  - 1. Inspect mechanical and electrical connections.
  - 2. Verify switch and relay type and labeling verification.
  - 3. Verify rating of installed fuses.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, vacuum dirt and debris from interiors; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.
- B. Inspect exposed surfaces and repair damaged finishes.

**END OF SECTION 262816**





## **SECTION 263323 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes the following central battery and power conversion equipment rated 600 V and less for emergency lighting:
  - 1. Interruptible (slow-transfer) central battery equipment.

#### **1.2 DEFINITIONS**

- A. DDC: Direct digital control.
- B. IBC: International Building Code.
- C. Interruptible: As used in the Section Text, an off-line, passive-standby or line-interactive, inverter-only unit, with an intentional interruption of power to the load until an internal transfer switch picks up and transfers the load to the unit's inverter and internal battery source on loss of the "normal" source, and then retransfers to the "normal" source when it is restored. Transfer time can be "slow" (up to approximately 1 second) or "fast" (2-4 ms or 40-50 ms, depending on manufacturer).
- D. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- E. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- F. NiCd: Nickel cadmium.
- G. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- H. PC: Personal computer.
- I. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.
- J. TDD: Total demand (harmonic current) distortion (also listed as "THD" in catalog data by manufacturers).
- K. THD(V): Total harmonic voltage demand.
- L. Uninterruptible: As used in the Section Text, an on-line, double-conversion (rectifier/inverter) unit, with no interruption of power to the load on interruption and restoration of the "normal" source.
- M. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- N. VRLA: Valve-regulated lead acid.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type and rating of central battery equipment unit.
  - 1. Include features, performance, electrical ratings, operating characteristics, shipping and operating weights, shipping splits, and furnished options, specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type and rating of central battery equipment unit.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, ventilation requirements, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include system one-line diagram, internal and interconnecting wiring; and diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 4. Include elevation, details, and legends of control and indication displays.
  - 5. Include -circuit current (withstand) rating of unit.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of central battery equipment.
- B. Harmonic Analysis Study and Report: Comply with IEEE 399 and NETA Acceptance Testing Specification; identify the effects of nonlinear loads and their associated harmonic contributions on the voltages and currents throughout the electrical system. Analyze [possible] [designated] operating scenarios, including recommendations for input filtering of central battery equipment to limit TDD and THD(V) to specified levels.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For central battery equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Include the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing central battery equipment.
    - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
    - c. Manufacturer's written instructions for selecting and setting field-adjustable controls and status and alarm points

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver equipment in fully enclosed vehicles.
- B. Store equipment in spaces having environments controlled within manufacturers' written instructions for ambient temperature and humidity conditions for non-operating equipment.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Less than -10 deg F or exceeding 110 deg F, with an average value exceeding 95 deg F over a 24-hour period.
  - 2. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace central battery equipment that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Special warranty, applying to batteries only, applies to materials only, on a prorated basis, for period specified.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Include the following warranty periods, from date of Substantial Completion:
    - a. Central Battery Equipment (excluding Batteries): Two year(s).
    - b. Standard VRLA Batteries:
      - 1) Full Warranty: One year.
      - 2) Pro Rata: Nine years.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INTERRUPTIBLE (SLOW-TRANSFER) CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Chloride Systems.
  - 2. Controlled Power Company; an Emerson company.
  - 3. Cooper Industries, Inc.
  - 4. Crucial Power Products.
  - 5. Dual-Lite.
  - 6. Emergi-Lite; a Thomas & Betts brand.
  - 7. Light-Alarm; a Thomas & Betts brand.
  - 8. LightGuard, A Philips Group Brand.
  - 9. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
  - 10. Myers Power Products, Inc.
  - 11. Thomas & Betts Corporation, A Member of the ABB Group.

- B. General Requirements for Interruptible (Slow-Transfer) Central Battery Equipment:
1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label central battery equipment to comply with UL 924.
  3. Comply with the IBC, NFPA 70, and NFPA 101.
  4. Source Limitations: Obtain central battery equipment, including batteries, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Performance Requirements:
1. Slow-Transfer Central Battery Equipment: Passive-standby (off-line) system. Automatically sense loss of normal alternating-current (ac) supply and use an electromechanical transfer switch to transfer loads. Transfer in one second or less from normal supply to battery-inverter supply.
  2. Automatic Operation:
    - a. Normal Conditions: Supply the load with ac power flowing from normal ac power input terminals, bypassing inverter, with battery connected in parallel via rectifier/charger output.
    - b. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal ac supply deviates from specified voltage, transfer switch operates and battery supplies constant, regulated ac power through the inverter to the load, with a momentary loss of power to the load.
    - c. If normal power fails, transfer switch operates and battery supplies constant, regulated ac power through the inverter to the load, with a momentary loss of power to the load.
    - d. If a fault occurs in system when being supplied by inverter and current flows in excess of the overload rating of inverter, inverter automatically protects itself against damage from overloads and short circuits by shutting down.
    - e. When normal ac power is restored at input supply terminals of unit, controls automatically retransfer the load back to the normal ac supply, with a momentary loss of power to the load. Rectifier/charger then recharges battery.
    - f. If normal power failure is prolonged (more than 90 minutes), integral low-voltage battery protective circuit disconnects battery and prevents battery from damage due to deep discharge.
    - g. If battery becomes discharged, and when normal ac supply is again available, rectifier/charger recharges battery. When battery is fully charged, rectifier/charger automatically shifts to float-charge mode.
    - h. If battery is disconnected, and normal ac power is available, central battery equipment continues to supply power to the load with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of output bus.
- D. Unit Operating Requirements:
1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 15 percent of central battery equipment input voltage rating.
  2. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of central battery equipment frequency rating.
  3. Minimum Off-Line Efficiency: 99 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
  4. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent under any load or operating condition.
  5. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating (Other Than Batteries): Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding 158 deg F
  6. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating (Batteries): Not less than -10 deg F and not exceeding 110 deg F
  7. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
  8. Off-Line Overload Capability: 1.5 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
- E. Inverter and Controls Logic: Microprocessor based, isolated from all power circuits; provides complete self-diagnostics, periodic automatic testing and reporting; with alarms.
- F. Controls and Indication:
1. Status Indication: Door-mounted, labeled LED indicators or digital screen displaying the following conditions:
    - a. Normal power available.
    - b. Status of system.
    - c. Battery charging status.
    - d. On battery power.
    - e. System fault.
    - f. External fault.
- G. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
1. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors to provide protection against damage from supply voltage surges as defined in IEEE C62.45, Category B and C.
  2. Integral, programmable, self-diagnostic and self-test circuitry; with alarms and logging.
  3. Battery deep-discharge and self-discharge protection; with alarms.
  4. Battery self-test circuitry; with alarms and logging.

- H. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: Thermal-magnetic circuit breaker, complying with UL 489.
  - 1. Integrated Equipment Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: 22 kA.
- I. Inverter:
  - 1. Description: Solid-state, high-frequency, PWM type, with the following operational features:
    - a. Automatically regulate output voltage to within plus or minus 5 percent, for all load ranges and for maximum 25 percent step-load changes.
    - b. Automatically regulate output frequency to within plus or minus 1 Hz, from no load to full load, at unity power factor, over the operating range of battery voltage.
    - c. Output Voltage Waveform: Sine wave with maximum 5 percent TDD throughout battery operating-voltage range, for 100 percent linear load.
    - d. Inverter Overload Capability: 115 percent for 10 minutes; 150 percent surge for 10 seconds.
- J. Rectifier/Battery Charger:
  - 1. Description: Solid state, variable rate, temperature compensated; automatically maintains batteries in fully charged condition when normal power is available.
  - 2. Maximum Battery Recharge Time from Fully Discharged State: 24 hours.
  - 3. Low-voltage disconnect circuit reduces battery discharge during extended power outages, monitors battery voltage, and disconnects inverter when battery voltage drops to no less than 85.7 percent of nominal voltage.
- K. Batteries:
  - 1. Description: Standard VRLA batteries.
    - a. Capable of sustaining full-capacity output of inverter unit for minimum of 90 minutes.
  - 2. Battery Disconnect and OCPD: Manufacturer's standard.
- L. Maintenance Bypass Systems:
  - 1. Maintenance Bypass Mode: Internal; manual operation only; bypasses central battery equipment power circuits (inverter and transfer switch); requires local operator selection at central battery equipment. Transfer and retransfer shall be break-before-make, with temporary disrupting power to the load.
  - 2. Bypass Overload Capability: 1.5 times the base load current.
- M. Integral Output Disconnecting Means and OCPD:
  - 1. Multiple-Output OCPDs: Thermal-magnetic circuit breakers, complying with UL 489; voltage rating matching unit output voltage rating; 20 A, single pole.

## 2.2 ENCLOSURES

- A. Central Battery Equipment Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - 1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1 steel cabinets with access to components through hinged doors with flush tumbler lock and latch.
  - 2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel finish over corrosion-resistant prime treatment.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Test and inspect central battery equipment according to UL 924.
- B. Central battery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store central battery equipment according to NECA 411.
- B. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive central battery equipment, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, structural support, ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment will be installed, before installation begins.

- C. Examine equipment before installation. Reject equipment that is wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- D. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of central battery equipment with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install central battery equipment and accessories according to NECA 411.
- C. Wall-Mounted Central Battery Equipment: Install central battery equipment on walls with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For units not on walls, provide freestanding racks.
- D. Comply with NECA 1.
- E. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- F. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ground equipment.
  - 1. Separately Derived Systems: Make grounding connections to grounding electrodes and bonding connections to metallic piping systems as indicated; comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Connect wiring.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify central battery equipment, components, and control wiring.
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label central battery equipment with engraved nameplates.
  - 3. Label each separate cabinet, for multicabinet units.
  - 4. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.
- B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for central battery equipment, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of central battery equipment units.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Inspect and Test Each Component:
    - a. Inspect wiring, components, connections, and equipment installations. Test and adjust components and equipment.

- b. Test insulation resistance for all external branch circuit, feeder, control, and alarm wiring connected to central battery equipment element and component.
  - c. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect central battery equipment, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust components and equipment.
  - 2. Test insulation resistance for all external branch circuit, feeder, control, and alarm wiring connected to central battery equipment element and component.
  - 3. Test continuity of each circuit.
  - 4. Verify that input voltages and frequencies at central battery equipment locations are within voltage and frequency limits specified in Part 2. If outside this range, notify Construction Manager before closing input OCPDs.
  - 5. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in manufacturer's written instructions and in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification, including specifically those for batteries, battery chargers, and UPS, regardless of the type of central battery equipment provided. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 6. Perform a load-duration test at rated voltage and rated output current to verify the correct functional operation of the unit under full-load stable operating conditions for the minimum time limits required by UL 924. Monitor and record ambient temperature and temperatures within the unit.
  - 7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of central battery equipment. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of central battery equipment 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - 9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Central battery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies central battery equipment and describes all test results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

**END OF SECTION 263323**

## **SECTION 264113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes lightning protection for structures.
- B. Scope of Work: Furnish and install a complete lightning protection system for the Liberty High School Performing Arts Center addition, that extends to the existing perimeter lightning protection systems. Field verify connection points and existing conditions. System to fully cover the expanded building footprint perimeter.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air terminals and mounting accessories.
  - 1. Layout of the lightning protection system, along with details of the components to be used in the installation.
  - 2. Include indications for use of raceway, data on how concealment requirements will be met, and calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of grounded and isolated metal bodies.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Certified by UL and LPI as a Master Installer/Designer, trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. System Certificate:
  - 1. UL Master Label.
  - 2. LPI System Certificate.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 780, "Definitions" Article.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS**

- A. Comply with UL 96 and NFPA 780.
- B. Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: NFPA 780, Class I, aluminum unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. East Coast Lightning Equipment Inc.
    - b. ERICO International Corporation.
    - c. Harger.
    - d. Heary Bros. Lightning Protection Co. Inc.
    - e. Independent Protection Co.
    - f. Preferred Lightning Protection.
    - g. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
    - h. Thompson Lightning Protection, Inc.
  - 2. Air Terminals More than 24 Inches Long: With brace attached to the terminal at not less than half the height of the terminal.
  - 3. Single-Membrane, Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: Designed specifically for single-membrane roof system materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 roofing Sections.
- C. Main and Bonding Conductors: Aluminum.
- D. Ground Loop Conductor: The same size and type as the main conductor except tinned.
- E. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch in diameter by 10 feet long.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to UL 96A and NFPA 780.
- B. Conceal the following conductors:
  - 1. System conductors.
  - 2. Down conductors.
  - 3. Interior conductors.
  - 4. Conductors within normal view of exterior locations at grade within 200 feet of building.
- C. Cable Connections: Use crimped or bolted connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components. Use exothermic-welded connections in underground portions of the system.
- D. Cable Connections: Use exothermic-welded connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components.
  - 1. Exception: In single-ply membrane roofing, exothermic-welded connections may be used only below the roof level.
- E. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with roofing membrane and adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Bond extremities of vertical metal bodies exceeding 60 feet in length to lightning protection components.
- G. Ground Loop: Install ground-level, potential equalization conductor and extend around the perimeter of structure.
  - 1. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building foundation.
  - 2. Bond ground terminals to the ground loop.
  - 3. Bond grounded building systems to the ground loop conductor within 12 feet of grade level.
- H. Bond lightning protection components with intermediate-level interconnection loop conductors to grounded metal bodies of building at 60-foot intervals.

### 3.2 CORROSION PROTECTION

- A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.
- B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Notify Architect at least 48 hours in advance of inspection before concealing lightning protection components.
- B. UL Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
- C. LPI System Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain an LPI System Certificate.

**END OF SECTION 264113**



## **SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior solid-state luminaires that use LED technology.
  - 2. Lighting fixture supports.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
  - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
  - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
  - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project, IES LM-79, and IES LM-80.
    - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- E. Sample warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4.
- C. CRI of 80 (minimum). CCT of 4000 K unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Rated lamp life of 50,000 (minimum) hours.
- E. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- F. Internal driver.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
  - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
  - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

## 2.3 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.4 LUMINAIRE FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before fixture installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and luminaire shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify, with ballast manufacturers, maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.
- C. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- E. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them.
- F. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- G. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaire Supports: Use grid as a support element.
  - 1. Install ceiling support system rods or wires, independent of the ceiling suspension devices, for each luminaire. Locate not more than 6 inches from luminaire corners.
  - 2. Support Clips: Fasten to luminaires and to ceiling grid members at or near each luminaire corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
  - 3. Luminaires of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support luminaires independently with at least two 3/4-inch metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
  - 4. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on luminaire. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the luminaire weight at a safety factor of 3.

- H. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Secured to outlet box.
  - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
  - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- I. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- J. Suspended Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
  - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
  - 3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
  - 4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  - 2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: Provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
  - 1. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

## END OF SECTION 265119

## **SECTION 265219 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Emergency lighting units.
  - 2. Exit signs.
  - 3. Luminaire supports.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
  - 1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
  - 3. Battery and charger for light units.
  - 4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - 5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.
    - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Product Schedule:
  - 1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

#### **1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.
- F. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
- G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.

### 2.2 EMERGENCY LUMINAIRES

- A. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with ballast.
  - 1. Emergency Connection: Operate lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 (minimum) lumens upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast or driver.
  - 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  - 3. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
    - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - 4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  - 5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
  - 6. Integral Self-Test (When Specified on Drawings): Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
- B. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.
  - 1. Emergency Connection: Operate fluorescent or LED lamp(s) continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast or driver.
  - 2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  - 3. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  - 4. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.

5. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly shall be located no less than half the distance recommended by the ballast, driver, or emergency power unit manufacturer, whichever is less.
6. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
7. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
8. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
9. Integral Self-Test (When Specified on Drawings): Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

## 2.3 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

- A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.
- B. Emergency Lighting Unit:
  1. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac or 277 V ac.
  2. Wall or ceiling with universal junction box adaptor.
  3. UV stable thermoplastic housing.
  4. Two Halogen or LED lamp heads.
  5. Internal emergency power unit.
- C. Remote Emergency Lighting Units:
  1. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac, 277 V ac, 6 V dc, 9.6 V dc, 12 V dc, or 24 V dc.
  2. Wall or ceiling with universal junction box adaptor.
  3. Steel housing rated for wet locations.
  4. Two Halogen or LED lamp heads.
  5. External emergency power unit.

## 2.4 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
  1. Operating at nominal voltage of 120 V ac or 277 V ac.
  2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
  3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
  1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:
  1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
  2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
  3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

- B. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- E. Suspended Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
  - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
- F. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Secure to any required outlet box.
  - 2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
  - 3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

### END OF SECTION 265219



## **SECTION 265500 - THEATRICAL EQUIPMENT HOOK-UP**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 REQUIREMENTS**

- A. As set forth in the headings of Division 0 and Division 1, General Conditions and Requirements shall apply to this branch of the Work.

#### **1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Division 26 - Basic electrical requirements and basic electrical material and method sections apply to work of this section.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. All codes and standards that apply to this section and the job site apply to the coordination and hook-up of all theatrical equipment.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers of electrical equipment shall be the same as to be consistent with the equipment and material used on the job site in compliance with all sections.
- B. Provide all necessary load wire, conduit and boxes with all necessary components and hook-up for the operation of the theatrical equipment and lighting system.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 INSTALLATION OF THEATRICAL LIGHTING EQUIPMENT**

- A. Install theatrical lighting equipment as outlined in Section 116100 and 116133; reference all theatrical "TH" plates and matrix for responsibilities.
- B. Install all conduits, back boxes, grid iron junction boxes, load wire and pull and terminate all load circuits at both ends.
- C. Coordinate with the theatre contractor all work necessary to complete the installation of the theatrical equipment and lighting system.

**END OF SECTION 265500**

## SECTION 265619 - LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that use LED technology.
  - 2. Lighting fixture supports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
  - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
  - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
  - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project, IES LM-79, and IES LM-80.
    - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- E. Sample warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4.
- C. CRI of 80 (minimum). CCT of 2700 K unless otherwise indicated.
- D. LEDs shall have a minimum L70 at 50,000 hours based on TM-21 Addendum-A lifetime report data.
- E. Internal driver or as listed in fixture schedule.
- F. Batteries in fixtures designated for emergency lighting must be compatible with the emergency unit used with minimum leakage.

### 2.2 DIMMING REQUIREMENTS

- A. LEDs dimmable from 100 percent to 5 percent of maximum light output, unless noted otherwise in the light fixture schedule.
- B. All LED dimming shall be smooth and free of flickering. Contractor shall coordinate between dimmer manufacturers, light fixture manufacturers, driver manufacturers, and lamp manufacturers as required in order to install a completely flicker free dimming system.

### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
  - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit LED or driver access without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during maintenance and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
  - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

- 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- E. Housings:
  - 1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
  - 2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- F. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

## 2.4 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.5 LUMINAIRE FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before fixture installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Remote Mounting of drivers: Distance between the driver and luminaire shall not exceed that recommended by the fixture manufacturer. Verify, with manufacturer, maximum distance between driver and luminaire.
- C. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them.
- E. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Secured to outlet box.
  - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
  - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

- G. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- H. Suspended Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
  - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
  - 3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
- I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  - 2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: Provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
  - 1. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

## END OF SECTION 265619

## SECTION 270000 - DISTRICT CABLING SPECIFICATIONS

Only EPiC would have fiber and data rack (1a and 1h).

### 1) Scope of Services

- a) **Fiberoptic Cabling:** Fiber will be installed connecting the Main Distribution Frame (MDF) fiber panel to the IDF(s) with 12-filament multi-mode fiber. Superior Essex Plenum, armored 12 strand OM4 fiber is L4012P401. Fiber to be terminated utilizing LC-bulkhead OR-OFP-LCD12LC and LC Connectors OR-205KNT9GA-50T (Fusion Spliced OM4 connector OR-205KNF9GA-50E). All Fiber to be routed to rack-mounted (top of rack) termination enclosures (Ortronics Part#OR-FC01U-P) from MDF to IDF 1.
- b) **Copper Cabling:** CMP 66-240-xB. Cat 6 Superior Essex Datagain 6+, Plenum rated blue part number: 66-240-2B where noted. Open areas noted on prints would be CMP 66-240-4B (white).
- c) **Cabling:** CMP 6H-272-xB. Cat 6A Superior Essex, Plenum rated blue part number: 6H-272-2B where noted. Open areas, if noted on prints, would be 6H-272-4B (white).
- d) **Cable Management**
  - i) No electrical tape or zip ties for bundling cables or attaching to j-hooks.
  - ii) Black plenum rated Velcro strips only for bundling cable. White plenum rated Velcro strips for the locations with white cabling.
  - iii) On the 48-port patch panels, both cable management bars are to be installed and utilized.
  - iv) On all cable terminations, stuffer caps are required at the field and closet locations.
  - v) When dressing cables on the back of the patch panels, half of the cables will run down the left side and the other half down the right side of the rack.
  - vi) New cables that are damaged during installation, such as a sliced or cut, even if they pass testing, must be replaced and tested and the old cabling removed.
  - vii) Damage to other cabling or systems not part of this project must be remedied by the vendor utilizing authorized vendors and/or cabling approved by the District at no cost to the District.
  - viii) During installation of new cabling, ceiling tiles along artery routes are to be left open until inspected by District Technology staff. Damaged tile and/or grid will need to be replaced by the vendor and will need to match existing tile and grid. Vendors will be responsible for closing all ceiling tiles after District inspections.
  - ix) Old Ethernet, fiber and enclosures, where applicable, not used will need to be removed and discarded by the vendor. This would also include any empty innerducts.
  - x) The District can provide ceiling tiles for any data closets that would need to be recut by the vendor to accommodate cabling pathways.
  - xi) Any penetration that is not drywall material will need a sleeve and pull string (for future runs) installed per applicable codes.
  - xii) Service loops of approximately 10-15' should be installed above the ceiling at each endpoint location as well as at each MDF/IDF rack location.
  - xiii) For any endpoint locations and/or conduit pathways that are vacated, add a pull string from wall location to above ceiling/starting point to ending point and cover with a correctly sized faceplate/metal cover.
  - xiv) All data, voice, access control, etc. cables shall be within raceway, J-hooks or other designated cable delivery system. Successful bidder must provide all hardware to run and secure Ethernet, fiber, etc. as specified by applicable codes and ordinances.
  - xv) Cable trunks should be secured above HVAC duct where applicable unless otherwise approved by the District. All cable should be neatly run within the cable trunk until branching off to an endpoint.
- e) **Clarity Rear-Load High Density Jack Panel Kits**
  - i) 48 Port Panel: 48-port, panel jack panel kit, flat, unloaded, 1 RU, Part: OR-PHDHJU48. All slots must be populated.
  - ii) Rear-load jacks part OR-HDJ6-00 Black (Cat 6) and part OR-HDJ6A-36 (Cat 6a). Blue.
  - iii) **All rows in each panel must be filled with the same type of panel jack. No mixing of Cat 6 and 6a jacks in a row. In a 48-port panel there can be a row of 24 Cat 6 and a row of 24 Cat 6a panel jacks. All ports must be terminated from left to right with no skipping of ports on the panel.**
- f) **Above ceiling:** TracJack Surface Mount Box. Part: OR-404HDJ2 (Fog White) for locations with two or less cables. For locations with three or four cables, use OR-404HDJ4 (Fog White). For locations with five or six cables, use OR-404HDJ6 (Fog White). TracJacks OR-HDJ6 Fog White (Cat 6) and part OR-HDJ6A-36 Blue (Cat 6a).
- g) **Wall installation where applicable:**
  - i) Wall mount box single: Part: OR-403HDJ16 Fog white
  - ii) Wall mount box dual: Part: OR-403HDJ212 Fog white
  - iii) Extra deep wall mount single: Part: Wiremold NM2044FW (for HDMI locations)
  - iv) Extra deep wall mount double: Part Wiremold NM2044-2FW (for HDMI locations)

- v) Wall mount box jack: Part: OR-HDJ6 Fog white
  - vi) 6-port Faceplate: 403HDJ16 (Fog White) for single gang boxes. NOTE: All vacant slots must be filled with blanks
  - vii) 4-port Faceplate: 419HDJ4-88 (Fog White) for dual gang boxes with half electrical where applicable.
  - viii) 12-port Faceplate: 403HDJ212 (Fog White) for dual-gang boxes. NOTE: All vacant slots must be filled with blanks
  - ix) Blank module, OR-HDJB (Fog White). All vacant slots must be filled with blanks
  - x) Wall mount box AV jack where applicable: OR-HDJ5E-68 (Dark Gray)
  - xi) Wall/Ceiling mount blanks: Blank module, OR-HDJB20. All unpopulated jacks must have a blank installed.
  - xii) Legrand-Wiremold PN10L10FW (Fog White-8 ft section)
  - xiii) Legrand-Wiremold PN10F86FW (Fog White-Ceiling Connector)
  - xiv) NOTE: All field Ethernet installations must be installed in the upper most top left location available and go from left to right and then down to the next available row, etc.
- h) Equipment Racks:
- i) IDF 1: The distribution frame termination equipment and any electronics to be mounted in one new vendor provided 7' standard free standing 19" EIA/TIA rack with vertical swivel managers. Hubbell Part number CS1976H. Vendor will provide four (4) Horizontal managements to be installed above and below each patch panel (Part # Hubbell HM24C, Cable MGMT Duct Panel 19"W x 3.5" H x 3.5" D w/ Cover, steel Black). Ladder from rack(s) to walls and along walls in data closets are to also be included where applicable (with mounting hardware). Wall Angle Support Kit p/n 11421-X12, 3" Channel Rack to Runway p/n 10595-X12 and 12" Universal Cable Runway p/n 10250-X12) as well as a rack mounted power strip, Tripp-Lite PDU1215. See ladder section for other specific part numbers.
  - i) Ladder rack to be verified/installed in all existing and/or new racks in all closets. All ladder rack should utilize whatever parts needed for securing to wall and rack.
    - i) Straight Sections: 6' part # HLS0612B, 10' part # HLS1012B
    - ii) 90° Turns: Inside Radius 12" part # HLI1290B, Outside Radius 12" part # HLO1290B and Flat Turn Radius 12" part # HLF1290B.
    - iii) Splice Kits: Butt splice part #: HLBSK, Swivel part # HLSSK, T-junction part # HLTK.
    - iv) Wall Angle Supports: 6-12" part number HLX0612
    - v) Vertical wall bracket (2 clips) part number HLVWBK
    - vi) Protective end caps, 2-pack, black part number HLECPK2
    - vii) Wall/Rack mounting kit: Includes (1) HLMPK19, (1) HLX0612,
    - viii) (1) 40"L x 12"W ladder section, part number HLWRK
    - ix) J-Bolt Kit 2-pack, galvanized, part number HLJB
    - x) Foot kit: 2-pack with splices, black, part number HLRF
  - j) Grounding: For data racks, provide necessary grounding and bonding within telecommunications room to comply with TIA-607 B standards. A grounding bar also needs to be installed near the floor close to the rack with Hubbell part number HBBB14210A (IDF 2 possibly at cabinet level). The grounding bar will be used at the main distribution point and not as an auxiliary point. Coordinate with the owner for location. Ladder rack, cable trays and free-standing rack(s), etc. must all be grounded as complete pieces. Connections must be clean and contain no spurs or sharp exposed wire. District will provide building ground to bus bar. None of the racks are currently grounded.
  - k) Labeling: All locations (fiber, Ethernet, etc.) are to be labeled in typewritten format or owner approved equivalent. Plastic protective covers that come with cable boxes are required. Hand-written location labels will not be permitted. Verify closet designations with the owner.
    - i) Field Termination: All location labels are to be installed behind the factory transparent plastic protector clearly indicating the closet, panel and port number. For example, in IDF L, jack locations are to be labeled by closet, panel and then port number. For example, L-2-01 would represent Closet L, Panel 2, Port 01. Multiple ports on a field termination endpoint would be labeled as "L-2-01 L-2-02". Label numbers should be above the termination box ports and endpoint terminations should always start at the top of the endpoint termination box. Numbers should be sequential in order where possible. For example, on a two-port box, labels would be at the top. In a three-port example two at the top and one at the bottom. In a four-port box two at the top and two at the bottom and in a six-port box three at the top and three at the bottom. All labeling starts at the top left of the box.
    - ii) Closet Termination: The panels do not require port labels to match the field termination end points. Each panel will only need one identifying label in the upper left-hand corner. Examples include L-1, L-2, etc. Verify with owner for clarification.
  - l) Ensure all cabling meets specifications utilizing a contractor provided certified tester following TIA-526-14-B guidelines. Provide OTLS test results for all Fiber Optic cabling delivered in written and magnetic media (USB drive or DVD). This includes testing and providing certification results for any cables that need to be pulled again after the initial testing results have been delivered to the District.
  - m) Any item of equipment or material not specifically addressed on the drawings or in this document and required to provide a complete and functional installation shall be provided in a level of quality consistent with other specified items at no additional cost to the owner.



- n) Codes: Unless otherwise documented, the successful bidder must provide all hardware to run and secure all cabling and equipment racks as specified by applicable codes and ordinances. References include but are not limited to the following:
  - i) BICSI: Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM), latest edition
  - ii) TIA/EIA-568-C: Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard
  - iii) EIA/TIA-569B: Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and spaces
  - iv) TIA/EIA-606: Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
  - v) National Electrical Code Article 770 "Optical Fiber Cables" and Article 800 "Communications Circuits"
  - vi) Local Electrical Code
  - vii) National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 70 National Electrical Code
  - viii) OSHA 29 CFR 1926/1910 Safety and Health Standards
  - ix) Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) Listings and Approvals
  - x) Country, state and local health, safety and building
- o) Penetrations of walls, floors and ceilings:
  - i) The Contractor shall make no penetration of floors, walls or ceiling without the prior consent of the owner.
  - ii) Where penetrations through acoustical walls or other walls for cableways are needed the Contractor will seal such penetrations in compliance with applicable code requirements.
  - iii) Where penetrations through fire-rated walls for cableways are needed the Contractor will seal such penetrations as required by code.
- p) General Installation
  - i) The contractor shall furnish all required installation tools to facilitate cable pulling without damage to fiber jacket.
  - ii) All routing shall be kept clear of other trades work and supported using the method(s) mentioned in this section.
  - iii) During pulling operation an adequate number of workers shall be present to allow fiber observation at all points of raceway entry and exit, as well as to feed fiber and operate pulling machinery.
  - iv) Pull cables in accordance with cable manufacturer's recommendations and ANSI/IEEE C2 standards.
  - v) Pull all cabling by hand unless installation conditions require mechanical assistance.
  - vi) Where mechanical assistance is used, ensure that maximum tensile load for fiber is not exceeded. This may be in the form of continuous monitoring of pulling tension, use of "break-away" or other approved method.
  - vii) Any fiber shall be installed splice-free.
  - viii) Avoid abrasion and other damage to cabling during installation.
  - ix) If pulling lubricant is used it shall be non-injurious to cabling jacket and other materials used and not harden or become adhesive with age.
  - x) Minimum bend radii, as specified by the manufacturer, must be adhered to for pulling and final installation.
  - xi) Any cabling bent or kinked to radius less than recommended dimension are not allowed and shall be replaced at no expense to owner.
  - xii) Repair damage to interior spaces caused by installation of cable, raceway or other hardware.
  - xiii) Repairs must match preexisting color and finish of walls, floors and ceilings.
- q) Documentation: An Excel spreadsheet will be prepared by vendor and submitted to the District in electronic format with at least the following information. Obtain official spreadsheet from customer.
  - i) Building name
  - ii) Data closet number/identifier
  - iii) Panel number
  - iv) Port number
  - v) Terminated in wall, floor or ceiling
  - vi) Room/Location Description
- r) Door Controls Red Icon: Door control element wire, Windy City Wire part number 4461030 (or equivalent but must have a yellow jacket), to be ran from designated doors to the designated MDF/IDF. At each door location, there will be a 10-foot service loop starting at the top of the door frame. At the designated MDF/IDF, cable must be able to touch the ground plus four feet. All terminations will be completed by District staff or contractor.
- s) Specialized Drops: If the map indicates something like HVAC, Door Controls, etc. next to the data drop symbol, the cable must be terminated inside of the enclosure. Note that the enclosure might not be installed at the time the cable is run. The cables will still be terminated in a biscuit and labeled accordingly. Coordinate with Network Administrator or Technology Director.
- t) Specialized Systems: Additional cable will need to be pulled for intercom and intrusion detection systems. Cabling for intercom locations will be 2-conductor 18-gauge unshielded plenum rated cable (yellow in color). Intrusion detection will be 18 gauge 4-conductor unshielded plenum rated cable (gray in color). All locations and routes will be identified on the maps and handed out at the walk through. Verify where cable needs to be landed and labeled for each specialized system. For example, intercom cabling is usually routed to the bottom of the equipment rack and labeled in the data closets.
- u) AV Requirements:
  - i) Cabling to be installed in classrooms with projectors (not the stage projector)
    - (1) HDMI cable Kramer CP-AOCH-50 High-Speed Fiber Optic HDMI Cable (50') and connectors to the projector and connected to the projector. Cable is to be routed through the mounting pole/conduit and connected to the projector. The end for the wall plate needs to be connected with appropriate vendor supplied HDMI coupler, fog white: HDJHDMI (with possible District provided angle adapter if needed).

- (2) Cat5e gray plenum rated Ethernet (no specific brand but the darker gray the better) is to be run from the wall plate (terminated 568B in dark gray wall jack HDJ5E-68) to new biscuit (OR-404HDJ2 with appropriate HD dark gray jack HDJ5E-68) at projector pole location with service loop on both ends.
- (3) At conference room locations, data will be installed at a specified location for District provided flat panel TV. There will be a single gang box down low and connected to the upper data box behind the TV. Vendor must connect an HDMI cable from upper location to lower location with HDJHDMI couplers. Blanks to be installed for any unused slots.

#### **VENDOR QUALIFICATIONS**

- a) The contractor must employ and utilize a BICSI RCDD in good standing at all times during the entire installation of this system.
- b) The contractor must have a minimum of five (5) years' experience on similar cabling systems.
- c) Vendor must agree to e-rate guidelines, have a valid SPIN number AND have a SPAC form on file that is not outdated.
- d) The Vendor must also have the necessary certifications to provide the nCompass Warranty offered between Legrand Ortronics and Superior Essex. The network cabling infrastructure must be installed by Supplier approved designers and Certified Contractors at the Certified Installer Plus-Enterprise Solutions Partner (CIP-ESP) tier or Certified Installer Plus (CIP) tier in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and specifications. Copies of certifications must be attached to the Vendor's response for evaluation by The Customer.

**END OF SECTION 270000**

## **SECTION 270500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves for pathways and cables.
  - 2. Sleeve seals.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Common communications installation requirements.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SLEEVES FOR PATHWAYS AND CABLES**

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

#### **2.2 SLEEVE SEALS**

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of pathway or cable.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Plastic. Include two for each sealing element.

#### **2.3 GROUT**

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both communications equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

### 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS

- A. Communications penetrations occur when pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pathway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal pathway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

#### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for communications installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

**END OF SECTION 270500**



## **SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Grounding conductors.
  - 2. Grounding connectors.
  - 3. Grounding busbars.
  - 4. Grounding rods.
  - 5. Grounding labeling.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. BCT: Bonding conductor for telecommunications.
- B. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- C. TGB: Telecommunications grounding busbar.
- D. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding busbar.

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room signal reference grid. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

#### **1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following:
  - 1. Ground rods.
  - 2. Ground and roof rings.
  - 3. BCT, TMGB, TGBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Result of the ground-resistance test, measured at the point of BCT connection.
    - b. Result of the bonding-resistance test at each TGB and its nearest grounding electrode.
    - c. .

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
  - 1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
  - 2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as a registered communications distribution designer to perform the on-site inspection.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

### 2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
  - 2. Panduit Corp.
  - 3. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.
- C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.
  - 1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.
  - 2. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Wire: No. 6 AWG.
  - 3. <Double click to insert sustainable design text for lead content.>
- D. Cable Tray Grounding Jumper:
  - 1. Not smaller than No. 10 AWG and not longer than 12 inches. If jumper is a wire, it shall have a crimped grounding lug with one hole and standard barrel for one crimp. If jumper is a flexible braid, it shall have a one- or two-hole ferrule. Attach with grounding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.
- E. Bare Copper Conductors:
  - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kmils, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch in diameter.
  - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  - 6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

### 2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
  - 2. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
  - 3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
  - 4. Panduit Corp.
  - 5. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.
- C. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.
  - 1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.



- D. Signal Reference Grid Connectors: Combination of compression wire connectors, access floor grounding clamps, bronze U-bolt grounding clamps, and copper split-bolt connectors, designed for the purpose.
- E. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression or exothermic-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inch centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.
- F. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

## 2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
  - 2. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
  - 3. Panduit Corp.
- B. TMGB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, ¼ inch thick by 4 inches wide by 29 inches long. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as TMGB and shall comply with J-STD-607-A.
  - 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
  - 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
  - 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

## 2.5 GROUND RODS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
  - 2. TE Connectivity Ltd.
- B. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet in diameter.

## 2.6 LABELING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Brother International Corporation.
  - 2. HellermannTyton.
  - 3. Panduit Corp.
- B. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- C. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.
- B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

- D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. The bonding conductors between the TGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 3/0 AWG.
  - 2. The bonding conductors between the TMGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 3/0 AWG.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2 AWG minimum.
- C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.
- D. Conductor Support:
  - 1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches.
- E. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:
  - 1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
  - 2. Install without splices.
  - 3. Support at not more than 36-inch intervals.
  - 4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inch PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing that complies with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of the conduit to a TGB.

### 3.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM

- A. The BCT between the TMGB and the ac service equipment ground shall not be smaller than No. 3/0 AWG.

### 3.5 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 12 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.
- B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.
- C. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - 1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
  - 2. Pretwist the conductor.
  - 3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.
- D. Primary Protector: Bond to the TMGB with insulated bonding conductor.
- E. Interconnections: Interconnect all TGBs with the TMGB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one TMGB is installed, interconnect TMGBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than No. 3/0 AWG unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the TGB No. 6 AWG bonding conductors.
- G. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each TGB and TMGB to the vertical steel of the building frame.
- H. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the TGB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2 when grounding screened, balanced, twisted-pair cables.
- I. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.
- J. Access Floors: Bond all metal parts of access floors to the TGB.
- K. Equipment Room Signal Reference Grid: Provide a low-impedance path between telecommunications cabinets, equipment racks, and the reference grid, using No. 6 AWG bonding conductors.
  - 1. Install the conductors in grid pattern on 4-foot centers, allowing bonding of one pedestal from each access floor tile.
  - 2. Bond the TGB of the equipment room to the reference grid at two or more locations.
  - 3. Bond all conduits and piping entering the equipment room to the TGB at the perimeter of the room.
- L. Towers and Antennas:
  - 1. Ground Ring: Buried at least 30 inches below grade and at least 24 inches from the base of the tower or mounting.
  - 2. Bond each tower base and metallic frame of a dish to the ground ring, buried at least 18 inches below grade.
  - 3. Bond the ground ring and antenna grounds to the equipment room TMGB or TGB, buried at least 30 inches below grade.
  - 4. Bond metallic fences within 6 feet of towers and antennas to the ground ring, buried at least 18 inches below grade.
  - 5. Special Requirements for Roof-Mounted Towers:
    - a. Roof Ring: Meet requirements for the ground ring except the conductors shall comply with requirements in Section 264113 "Lightning Protection for Structures."
    - b. Bond tower base footings steel, the TGB in the equipment room, and antenna support guys to the roof ring.
    - c. Connect roof ring to the perimeter conductors of the lightning protection system.
  - 6. Waveguides and Coaxial Cable:
    - a. Bond cable shields at the point of entry into the building to the TGB and to the cable entrance plate, using No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.

- b. Bond coaxial cable surge arrester to the ground or roof ring using bonding conductor size recommended by surge-arrester manufacturer.

### 3.7 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- B. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- C. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches extends above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- D. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect grounding conductors to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.
  - 1. Label TMGB(s) with "fs-TMGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TMGB.
  - 2. Label TGB(s) with "fs-TGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TGB.
  - 3. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a TMGB and a TGB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.
    - a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.
  - 3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.
    - a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the TMGB and in each TGB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.
- C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.
- D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### END OF SECTION 270526

## **SECTION 270536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes aluminum cable trays and accessories.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include data indicating dimensions and finishes for each type of cable tray indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of cable trays, including plans, elevations, and sections of components and attachments to other construction elements. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, splice-plate connectors, expansion-joint assemblies, straight lengths, and fittings.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Operation and maintenance data.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Chalfant Manufacturing Company.
  - 2. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  - 3. Cope, T. J., Inc.; a subsidiary of Allied Tube & Conduit.
  - 4. GS Metals Corp.; GLOBETRAY Products.
  - 5. MONO-SYSTEMS, Inc.
  - 6. MPHusky.
  - 7. PW Industries.
  - 8. Pre-approved equal.

#### **2.2 MATERIALS AND FINISHES**

- A. Cable Trays, Fittings, and Accessories: Aluminum, complying with NEMA VE 1, Aluminum Association's Alloy 6063-T6 for rails, rungs, and cable trays, and Alloy 5052-H32 or Alloy 6061-T6 for fabricated parts; with Type 316 stainless-steel splice-plate fasteners, bolts, and screws.
  - 1. Sizes and Configurations: Center hung divided aluminum cable tray 12" wide x 4" deep with 6" rung. Provide support for load of 100lb per linear foot.

#### **2.3 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES**

- A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- B. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- C. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cable tray with minimum 12" clear above, 4" clear below, and 2 feet clear on sides. Coordinate installation of cable tray with all other trades and provide coordination drawings indicating required clearances are maintained with respect to ductwork, piping, sprinklers, conduit, etc.
- B. Comply with recommendations in NEMA VE 2. Install as a complete system, including all necessary fasteners, hold-down clips, splice-plate support systems, barrier strips, hinged horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, and crosses.
- C. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.
- D. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure.
  - 1. Place supports so that spans do not exceed maximum spans on schedules.
  - 2. Construct supports from channel members, threaded rods, and other appurtenances furnished by cable tray manufacturer. Arrange supports in trapeze or wall-bracket form as required by application.
  - 3. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.
  - 4. Manufacture center-hung support, designed for 60 percent versus 40 percent eccentric loading condition, with a safety factor of 3.
  - 5. Locate and install supports according to NEMA FG 1.
- E. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable tray and to equipment. Support cable tray independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable tray on equipment enclosure.
- F. Install expansion connectors where cable tray crosses building expansion joint and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended in NEMA FG 1. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.
- G. Make changes in direction and elevation using standard fittings.
- H. Make cable tray connections using standard fittings.
- I. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- J. Sleeves for Future Cables: Install capped sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers.
- K. Workspace: Install cable trays with enough space to permit access for installing cables.
- L. Install barriers to separate cables of different systems, such as power, communications, and data processing; or of different insulation levels, such as 600, 5000, and 15 000 V.
- M. After installation of cable trays is completed, install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays.
- N. Install cables only when cable tray installation has been completed and inspected.
- O. Fasten cables on horizontal runs with cable clamps or cable ties as recommended by NEMA VE 2. Tighten clamps only enough to secure the cable, without indenting the cable jacket. Install cable ties with a tool that includes an automatic pressure-limiting device.
- P. On vertical runs, fasten cables to tray every 18 inches. Install intermediate supports when cable weight exceeds the load-carrying capacity of the tray rungs.
- Q. Install covers after installation of cable is completed.
- R. Ground cable trays according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- S. Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor with cable tray, in addition to those required by NFPA 70.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, survey for compliance with requirements. Perform the following field quality-control survey:
1. Visually inspect cable insulation for damage. Correct sharp corners, protuberances in cable tray, vibration, and thermal expansion and contraction conditions, which may cause or have caused damage.
  2. Verify that the number, size, and voltage of cables in cable tray do not exceed that permitted by NFPA 70. Verify that communication or data-processing circuits are separated from power circuits by barriers.
  3. Verify that there is no intrusion of such items as pipe, hangers, or other equipment that could damage cables.
  4. Remove deposits of dust, industrial process materials, trash of any description, and any blockage of tray ventilation.
  5. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity. Check bolted connections between sections for corrosion. Clean and retorquing in suspect areas.
  6. Check for missing or damaged bolts, bolt heads, or nuts. When found, replace with specified hardware.
  7. Perform visual and mechanical checks for adequacy of cable tray grounding; verify that all takeoff raceways are bonded to cable tray.

**END OF SECTION 270536**





## **SECTION 274116 - AUDIO-VISUAL COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. This section pertains to the audio-visual communication system to be furnished and installed in the Liberty Public Schools - Middle School Storm Shelter Additions. (C3059).
- B. It is the purpose of this specification to require the furnishing of highest-quality materials, equipment, and workmanship. The work shall be in accordance with this specification and in conformity with the designs, layouts, and descriptions shown on the drawings.
- C. Any and all structural, mounting, or rigging details on the drawings are shown for concept only. It shall be the responsibility of the Systems Contractor to employ the services of a qualified Structural Engineer to be responsible for the design of the details to be employed. Stamped shop drawings and calculations of all such details shall be submitted to the Architect for review.
- D. Unless noted otherwise on the drawings, the work shall include everything necessary or incidental to complete the installation EXCEPT wire raceway, conduit, cable trays, fittings, outlet boxes, pull boxes, terminal cabinets, 120-volt AC power circuits, and insulated ground cables. Such excluded equipment shall be furnished and installed by the project Electrical Contractor. The Systems Contractor shall furnish all necessary information to the Electrical Contractor to ensure that a proper audio conduit system will be installed.
- E. The Systems Contractor shall furnish all loudspeaker back boxes (loudspeaker enclosures) and, where such enclosures are shown to be connected directly to conduit, the Systems Contractor shall furnish the enclosures to the Electrical Contractor for installation under the electrical contract.
- F. The Systems Contractor shall cooperate with all other contractors engaged in this project and shall coordinate the installation of the audio-visual communication systems so that all work will proceed in a manner which is in the best interests of the Owner.

#### **1.2 EXISTING CONDITIONS**

- A. This facility is an addition to an existing structure. It shall be the responsibility of each bidder to verify all conditions and dimensions which pertain to this work.

#### **1.3 DEFINITION OF TERMS**

- A. The term "Owner" shall refer to Liberty Public Schools; 8 Victory Lane; Liberty, MO 64068; phone (816) 736-5300.
- B. The term "Architect" shall refer to Hollis+Miller Architects; 1828 Walnut Street; Kansas City, MO 64108; phone (816) 422-7700.
- C. The term "Acoustical Consultant" shall refer to AVANT ACOUSTICS, LLC; 14827 W. 95<sup>th</sup> Street; Lenexa, KS 66215; phone (913) 888-9111.
- D. The term "Systems Contractor" shall refer to the person, persons, or company who or which contracts for the performance of the audio-visual communication system work specified herein.

#### **1.4 CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. The Systems Contractor must be a "Systems Contractor" who regularly engages in the furnishing and installation of commercial and industrial audio-visual communication systems.
  - 1. The Systems Contractor shall have completed at least three (3) projects in the last five (5) years of similar size and scope.

- B. The Systems Contractor must maintain a suitably staffed and equipped service organization and must regularly offer maintenance services for systems of this type and size.
- C. The Systems Contractor shall be able to respond to on-site maintenance service requests within 24 hours during the warranty period described in section 3.07 System Warranty and Maintenance at the end of these specifications.
- D. The Systems Contractor is required to employ staff, to be engaged in this project, with the following certifications:
  - 1. Certified Technology Specialist - Installation.
  - 2. Certified QSC Q-sys Control Programmer.
- E. As part of the bid submittal, Systems Contractor shall submit appropriate information to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Owner, Architect, and Acoustical Consultant that the Systems Contractor has
  - 1. Completed similar projects as described above;
  - 2. Adequate plant and equipment to pursue the work properly and expeditiously;
  - 3. Ability to provide maintenance visits in the time window described above;
  - 4. Adequate staff with the required technical experience and certifications described above;
  - 5. Suitable financial status to meet the obligations of the work.
- F. Any other contractor, who intends to bid on this work as the prime contractor and does not otherwise meet the requirements of the "Contractor Qualifications" paragraph(s) above, shall employ the services of a "Systems Contractor" who does meet the requirements noted above and who shall furnish the audio and video equipment; shop fabricate the equipment racks and subassemblies; make all audio, video and control connections to equipment and equipment racks in the AV equipment room; make all connections to remote mixer controls and microphone connection panels; and continuously supervise the installation and connections of all audio-visual communication system cable and equipment.
- G. A subcontractor so employed as the "Systems Contractor" must be acceptable to the Architect and the Acoustical Consultant and shall be identified on the Bid Proposal Form.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. The Systems Contractor shall submit electronic documents of the following Shop Drawings per the schedule listed below for review by the Architect and the Acoustical Consultant. Refer to the General and Special Conditions for additional requirements such as physical submittal copies.
  - 1. Prior to proceeding with the work:
    - a. A complete list of ALL equipment and materials which are to be furnished. Accompanying the list shall be equipment quantities and manufacturers' specification or cut sheets for all sound system equipment (e.g. microphones, audio program source equipment, power amplifiers, loudspeakers), audio-visual equipment (e.g. projectors, program source equipment, monitors, video processing equipment), AV control equipment (e.g. touchpanels, system controllers, interface/control cards), and any other MAJOR items of equipment.
  - 2. Prior to proceeding with respective portions of work:
    - a. Drawings indicating proposed nameplate nomenclature and arrangements for control panels, patch panels, connection plates, floor boxes, and nameplates prior to fabrication as described elsewhere in these specifications.
    - b. Detail drawings of proposed loudspeaker suspension including attachment methods, weights, suspension locations, and calculations approved by the Systems Contractor's Structural Engineer.
    - c. Detail drawings showing projector/projection screen/flat panel display/LED display mounting.
    - d. Detail drawings showing front panel layouts for all equipment racks and AV lecterns, prior to installation, reflecting equipment, and labels to be used.
    - e. Diagram drawings for AC power low-voltage control switching, indicating distribution and sequencing of AC circuits for both on and off cycles.
    - f. Control system layout.
    - g. Custom furniture and/or custom millwork.
    - h. Details and descriptions of any other aspect of the audio-visual communication system which must differ from the drawings due to field conditions or due to the selected equipment to be furnished.
  - 3. As otherwise noted on the drawings and/or as noted herein.

- B. Approved shop drawings and equipment instruction brochures, including schematic diagrams for all amplifiers and other electronic devices, shall be present at the job site during the period set aside for final system test and equalization.
- C. Notebooks of operating instructions shall be prepared as described elsewhere in the specifications.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. It is the intention of these specifications to provide a complete and properly operating audio-visual communication system. The major items of equipment shall be furnished in the quantity indicated by the audio-visual communication system diagrams on the drawings or in the quantity as specified herein. (Refer to the Portable Equipment Quantity list at the end of the specifications.) However, any minor item of equipment or hardware that may not be specifically shown on the drawings or specified herein but required for proper audio-visual communication system operation or installation shall be furnished by the Systems Contractor.
- B. All equipment and material shall be new and shall be suitable for continuous operation.
- C. The latest version of all specified equipment shall be furnished by the Systems Contractor.
- D. In any case, where a specific specification has not been included herein or shown on the drawings for any item that is required, the Systems Contractor shall furnish only the best quality equipment or material consistent with the quality of other specified equipment and material.
- E. Where the specifications list several manufacturers for a particular major item of equipment such as power amplifiers or loudspeakers, the Systems Contractor shall supply all of that item of equipment from one manufacturer.

### 2.2 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Where a specific piece of equipment has been discontinued and/or replaced by a new model, submission of the new model or a suitable item as applicable may be required by the Acoustical Consultant for evaluation prior to acceptance.
- B. If substitute equipment is allowed by written consent, the Systems Contractor shall be completely responsible for the use of such equipment. The Systems Contractor shall replace all such equipment with equipment listed by type number in the specifications if there is any evidence of equipment instability or unsuitability.
- C. Costs of any required evaluation and testing of substitute equipment shall be paid by the Systems Contractor.
- D. Any use of substitute equipment shall be at no extra cost to the Owner.
- E. Proposed substitute equipment shall be specifically noted in submittals as "substitution" with a footnote stating the reason for the substitution.
- F. Offerors proposing to furnish an "or equal" product must furnish all descriptive material necessary to demonstrate the acceptability of such product. The Acoustical Consultant shall be the sole determiner as to whether the proposed "or equal" product is suitable for use in work based upon review of the descriptive materials furnished.

### 2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS AND SUMMARIES

- A. AUDITORIUM SOUND REINFORCEMENT SYSTEM (EACH MIDDLE SCHOOL)
  - 1. The system will be designed to operate in two primary modes "SPORTS" and "PERFORMANCE".
  - 2. Sound system input/output connections will be installed in a total of nine (9) wallbox locations around the room, each with the connectivity described below:

- a. Center Stage Apron Wallbox (1 total): Two (2) analog audio connections, one (1) microphone connection for use with the automixing system described below, one (1) line level input for portable music sources, (2) paralleled analog return channel outputs, one (1) Bluetooth audio input, and one (1) digital audio network connection.
  - b. Stage Left Apron Wallbox (1 total): One (1) analog audio connection, (2) paralleled analog return channel outputs, two (2) antenna connections, and two (2) digital audio network connections.
  - c. Stage Right Apron Wallbox (1 total): One (1) analog audio connection, (2) paralleled analog return channel outputs, and one (1) digital audio network connection.
  - d. Each Stage Wing Wallbox (2 total): One (1) analog audio connections, one (1) microphone connection for use with the automixing system described below, one (1) line level inputs for portable music sources, two (2) paralleled analog return channel outputs, and one (1) digital audio network connection. One (1) Bluetooth audio input only on stage right.
  - e. Rear Stage Wallboxes (2 total): One (1) analog audio connection, two (2) paralleled analog return channel outputs, and one (1) digital audio network connection.
  - f. Operating Locations (2 Total): Two (2) antenna connections, and two (2) digital audio network connections.
3. A selection of wired handheld microphones (6) and instrument microphones (2) will be provided for use with the sound system. A variety of microphone extension cables and floor stands will also be provided.
4. Twenty-four (24) wireless microphone channels will be provided for use with the mixing console, with the following transmitters/ microphones (only one transmitter/microphone may be used with each channel at a time).
  - a. Two (2) handheld microphone transmitters.
  - b. Twenty-four (24) beltpack transmitters.
  - c. Twenty-four (24) earset microphones.
5. Two (2) wireless microphone channels will be provided for use with the automix system, with the following transmitters/ microphones (only one transmitter/microphone may be used with each channel at a time).
  - a. Two (2) handheld microphone transmitters.
  - b. Two (2) beltpack transmitters.
  - c. Two (2) aerobics-style microphones.
6. An automatic microphone mixing system will be provided for use during simple speaking events where a dedicated sound system operator is not required. Two (2) wireless microphones and three (3) wired microphone inputs will be connected to this system.
7. A portable equipment case with a 64-channel digital mixing console will be provided with the system for use during larger/more complex performances. The digital mixing console incorporates on-board processing and dynamics for effective control of both digital and analog audio input sources, while allowing the saving and recalling of all mixer settings, including fader positions, for individual production types or for different scene cues within a particular production.
  - a. The digital mixing console will connect to the system via a network cable at a temporary operating position near the back of the room. Wired inputs will connect to a digital audio snake located in the equipment rack for input to the mixing console.
  - b. One (1) 16x8 Stagebox will be provided to be shared between the schools.
  - c. One (1) 2-input and one (1) 2-output audio network dongle will be provided for additional system input and output.
  - d. Digital audio workstation (DAW) multi-channel recording capabilities are also available utilizing Dante virtual sound card software installed on a compatible computer that is connected to the digital audio network.
  - e. This mixer supports live remote control and configuration through a computer or iPad® app through the building network infrastructure.
  - f. The digital mixing console may be plugged into any wallbox with audio-video network connections.
8. The digital audio and control backbone of the sound system will be based on the Dante® protocol connecting together the mixing console and the audio processor located in the equipment rack, and portable stagebox (future) via a standard Gigabit Ethernet network included as part of this project. Local UPS units (Owner Provided) will be provided at each location with network equipment to guard against brownout conditions and temporary loss of power.
9. Loudspeaker distribution in the Multipurpose Room will consist of the following subsystems to provide full range audio coverage for all seats/floor:

- a. A front row of "source" loudspeakers above the proscenium consisting of four (4) 12-inch 2-way loudspeakers to provide full range coverage to the front seating area. In "SPORTS" mode these will operate as a mono source. In "PERFORMANCE" mode, the three located directly above the proscenium will operate in a Left/Center/Right configuration, with the fourth turned off.
  - b. A second row of satellite loudspeakers around the center of the floor, consisting of four (4) 12-inch 2-way loudspeakers, will provide coverage to the rear of the floor and middle of the seats. This row will operate in the same way as the front "source" row.
  - c. One row of satellite loudspeakers consisting of five (5) 8-inch 2-way loudspeakers, will provide coverage to the upper rows of bleacher seating. These loudspeakers will only operate in "PERFORMANCE" mode.
  - d. One (1) sub-bass loudspeaker installed above the proscenium to supplement low frequencies in music and theatrical effects.
  - e. Two (2) two-way loudspeakers will be provided on stage to act as stage monitors in "PERFORMANCE" mode or as a separate audio system in "SPORTS" mode for instances when the stage is used as a classroom.
10. A radio frequency wireless hearing assistance system will allow anyone in the Multipurpose Room who may need some assistance hearing the program to personally amplify the audio from the sound reinforcement system without disturbing others. This system will provide coverage for the personal receivers in all seating areas. Eight (8) personal receivers and headsets and three (3) neck loops are included with this system. Additional receivers and neck loops may be purchased as warranted.
  11. One (1) stereo recording microphone will be suspended from the ceiling and connected to the digital mixing console and network recording/streaming device for use in making simple recordings of the events in the space.
  12. For technical players during a performance (including the lighting and sound technicians and spotlight operators, among others), a wireless production intercom will be included in the Multipurpose Room. This system will include eight (8) wireless earset units.
  13. The power amplifiers and the control and processing equipment for the sound system will be housed in floor standing equipment racks in one of the storage rooms adjacent to the Multipurpose Room.
  14. A portable audio cart will be provided to house the mixing console and the wireless microphones and act as the primary operating location, connected to the system via a network cable. A matching unit will also be provided for the lighting system.
  15. The sound system will be controlled via a 10-inch diagonal touchpanels located on stage right, the portable audio cart, and the equipment rack, as well as portable iPad or access via laptop computers (provided by others). These control interfaces will control system power on/off, automatic/manual mixing mode selection, and audio distribution routing options.

#### B. AUDITORIUM AUDIO-VISUAL SYSTEM (EACH MIDDLE SCHOOL)

1. A motorized front projection screen (220" diagonal, 16:9 HDTV format) will be located in front of the proscenium opening for viewing computer presentations and video content.
2. A 10,000-lumen high definition video projector (Owner Provided) will be mounted in cage on the rear wall of the room above the bleachers.
3. System input connections will be located at stage right, the front of the stage, stage right, and at the portable operating location. Each location will have an HDMI input for connections to laptop computers and other portable source devices (not included). Additional network connected portable HDMI input and output devices will be provided for flexible uses.
4. The audio-visual system will be controlled via the touchpanel/portable devices described in the sound reinforcement system section above for audio level control, projection screen and projector on/off control, simple video recording controls, and video routing.
5. One (1) pan-tilt-zoom (PTZ) video camera will be installed at the rear of the room for simple audio and video recording of events on stage.
6. An audio/video stream will be available over the building network for playback via computer on local systems, utilizing the existing District-wide IPTV system.
7. An audio/video recording device and internet streaming device will be installed in the equipment rack, with rack mounted video monitors for each.

## 2.4 SOUND SYSTEMS

### A. Microphones

1. Handheld Microphone, dynamic cardioid, with metal body and XLR connector, and with microphone stand adapter.
  - a. Audix OM5; or
  - b. Sennheiser e935.
2. Instrument Microphone, with metal body and XLR connector, dynamic cardioid, with microphone stand adapter.

- a. Audix i5; or
  - b. Shure SM57; or
  - c. Approved equal.
3. Stereo Microphone, stereo shotgun, with M-S mode and matrixed L-R mode, metal body and 5-pin XLR connector, with 5-pin to two 3-pin XLR adapter cable, and with shock mount adapter.
  - a. Audio-Technica BP4029 with AT8415 shock mount.
4. Earset Microphone, miniature size, omnidirectional, with cable four feet long, small diaphragm condenser, for theatrical use, with dual ear style headband, with connector compatible with wireless bodypack transmitter specified below.
  - a. Galaxy Audio HSM4-4SHU, with TA4F connector.
  - b. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications for colors and quantities.
5. Aerobics Microphone, each with cable four feet long, with dual ear adapter, with connector compatible with wireless bodypack transmitter specified below, moisture-resistant, black color, flexible boom.
  - a. Shure SM31FH.
6. Wireless Microphone System, UHF, G50 band, with bodypack and handheld microphone transmitters, quantity as indicated on the drawings, with rack mounting brackets and power supplies as required for installation as shown on the drawings.
  - a. Shure QLX-D Series units listed below:
    - 1) QLXD4 receiver.
    - 2) QLXD1 bodypack transmitter.
    - 3) QLXD2/SM87A handheld transmitter (quantity as shown on drawings).
  - b. Provide one set of alkaline batteries with each wireless microphone transmitter furnished.
  - c. For all wireless microphones listed above, provide a different operating frequency for each wireless microphone transmitter/receiver pair, free from interference, in the UHF Band on an unused channel per FCC regulations. Assist the Owner in licensing these transmitter(s) as required.

#### B. Microphone Accessories

1. Omnidirectional Remote Antenna, wideband frequency response, passive operation for cable lengths less than 25 feet, active operation for cable lengths greater than 25 feet, omnidirectional, with surface-mounting hardware, same manufacturer as Wireless Microphone System chosen above.
  - a. Shure UA860SWB with UA834UWB and in-line amplifier.
2. Antenna Distribution Amplifier, for wireless microphone system UHF antenna, active operation, same manufacturer as Wireless Microphone System chosen above.
  - a. Shure UA844+SWB.
3. Microphone Floor Stand, tripod-style weighted base, with telescoping boom attachment, matte black finish.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
4. Microphone Table Stand, weight base with gooseneck and push-to-talk switch, for use with dynamic microphones, with 18-inch microphone cable to connect microphone.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
5. Microphone Extension Cable, factory fabricated units; male XLR to female XLR connections, black cable with color-coded strain relief on male connector only.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
6. Microphone Cable Tester.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
7. Antenna Extension Cable, factory fabricated units; 50 Ohm, with BNC connectors, black cable.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.

#### C. Audio Source Equipment

1. Network Bluetooth (BT) Input, dual gang Decora style wall plate, Dante digital audio network, with front panel pairing button and connection status LED indicator, with Bluetooth input and stereo analog audio input/output connections, faceplate color as selected by architect.
  - a. RDL DD-BTN44; or
  - b. Approved equal.
2. Network Audio Input, single gang Decora style wall plate, Dante digital audio network, with dual XLR inputs, dip-switch selectable mic/line level gain, faceplate color as selected by architect.
  - a. Extron AXI 22 AT D; or
  - b. QSC Atterotech Axon D2i; or
  - c. RDL DD-BN2M; or
  - d. Approved equal.

#### D. Audio Processing Equipment

1. Digital Audio Processor (DAP), computer appliance, with drag and drop type software configurable processing enabling parametric broadband and narrowband filters, audio delays, gain control, and mixing of audio signals, with multiple configurable logic inputs and outputs, expandable architecture, with multiple configurable logic connections; with Dante and Q-LAN digital audio compatibility, compatible with Network Video Devices for control and video routing, ability to store program on DSP and connected computer, ability to download stored and current programming from DSP, all components from the same manufacturer.
  - a. QSC Q-sys Core 110f.
  - b. Provide the following licenses for each DAP:
    - 1) UCL.
    - 2) Scripting Control.
    - 3) Dante 32x32.
  - c. As part of the final system tests and equalization services, the Acoustical Consultant will provide initial digital audio processor files to the AV Contractor to include the following functions in the Competition Gym and Aux Gym.
    - 1) Microphone narrowband equalization.
    - 2) Audio routing and mixing.
    - 3) Loudspeaker matrix mixing.
    - 4) Loudspeaker equalization.
    - 5) Loudspeaker time-alignment.
    - 6) Video routing.
    - 7) Projector power on/off control.
    - 8) Projection Screen up/down control.
    - 9) Control system triggering of internal functions or presets.
    - 10) AC Power control.
  - d. The Systems Contractor shall provide system programming and/or scripting incorporating all the above functions, with input from the Owner and the Acoustical Consultant during commissioning. As part of the final system tests and equalization services, the Acoustical Consultant will provide initial digital audio processor files, including user interface touch panel screen and remote-control unit layouts to the Systems Contractor for use in the system programming.
2. Relay Control Expanders, configurable dry contact control inputs/outputs, POE powered, rack mounted.
  - a. Global Cache iTach IP2CC-P; or
  - b. Approved equal.
3. Type 1 Control Touchpanel, wall or rack-mounted, nominal 10" diagonal touchscreen, black, PoE compatible, compatible with Digital Audio Processor specified.
  - a. QSC TSC-101-G3.
4. Type 2 Control Touchpanel, tabletop mounted, nominal 10" diagonal touchscreen, black, PoE compatible, compatible with Digital Audio Processor specified.
  - a. QSC TSC-101-G3 with TSC-710t-G3 tablestand.

#### E. Audio Mixers

1. Digital Mixing Console, minimum 64 mix channels, with minimum 32 local mic/line inputs, 8 local line inputs, 16 analog outputs, with multiple mix and matrix busses, with motorized faders with assignable layers, with 64x64 channel Dante digital audio bus, with at least 4 stereo effects processors and 8 graphic equalizers, with color touchscreen display, with scene preset and recall, remote PC and iPad control via Ethernet connection, compatible with Stageboxes below, with USB memory storage, and with LED gooseneck lamp.
  - a. Yamaha QL5, two LA1L lamps, and dust cover.
  - b. Provide on-site end-user training by factory-authorized personnel.
2. Rackmount Stagebox, Dante enabled, with 16 microphone preamps and 8 balanced outputs on XLR connectors, rack mountable, with headamp control, compatible with Digital Mixing Console.
  - a. Yamaha Rio1608-D2.
3. Input/Output Stagebox, Dante enabled, with 16 microphone preamps and 8 balanced outputs on XLR connectors, rack mountable, with headamp control, compatible with Digital Mixing Console.
  - a. Yamaha Rio1608-D2 unit mounted in Stagebox Case specified below.
  - b. Extend Dante in/out and AC power connections to respective front panel EtherCON and PowerCON connectors.
4. Stagebox Case, portable rack, 4 RU, molded plastic shell, removable front and back panels, molded construction, with pull handle and wheels.
  - a. Gator Cases G-PROR-4U-19; or
  - b. SKB Cases 1SKB-R4UW; or
  - c. Approved Equal.
5. Portable Digital Audio Input Device, one RJ45 Dante connection, two analog line level audio inputs, pig-tail XLR audio connectors, PoE powered, DDM-Ready.

- a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
6. Portable Digital Audio Output Device, one RJ45 Dante connection, two analog line level audio outputs, pig-tail XLR audio connectors, PoE powered, DDM-Ready.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.

#### F. Power Amplifiers

1. Audio Power Amplifier, max 1000 watts per channel at 8 ohms, with 70V output mode and bridged modes, maximum 20A mains connector, with self-protection for shorted circuits and current limiting, with rack ears, with digital audio input compatible with Digital Audio Processor.
  - a. QSC CX-Q 4K8.
2. Audio input connections to all power amplifiers shall be made with 3-pin microphone type connectors, with spade lugs on barrier terminal strips, or with screw actuated pressure type terminal strips. Audio output connections to all power amplifiers shall be made with spade lugs on barrier strips, with double banana plugs, or with Neutrik "Speakon" type connectors. Connections with ¼-inch phone plugs will not be permitted.

#### G. Loudspeakers and Accessories

1. Type 1 Two-Way Loudspeaker, with 12-inch low frequency driver and high frequency compression driver, 90 H x 90 V degree coverage, with rotatable horn, with internal rigging points, 94 dB 1W/1m sensitivity @ 1kHz, 300W RMS power rating, nominal 8 ohms, nominal -6dB frequency response of 40Hz-16kHz, with mounting hardware as required, same manufacturer as Array Loudspeaker.
  - a. Biamp Community IP6-1122/99; or
  - b. EAW MK2399i; or
  - c. ElectroVoice EVF-1122S/99; or
  - d. JBL AM5212/99; or
  - e. Approved equal.
  - f. Provide manufacturer's U-bracket with each loudspeaker.
  - g. Loudspeaker and mounting hardware to be ordered as a custom color to be selected by the Architect.
  - h. Provide mounting hardware as required to mount the loudspeakers in the locations shown on the drawings.
2. Type 2 Two-Way Loudspeaker, with 8-inch low frequency driver and high frequency compression driver, with integrated rigging points, 98 dB 1W/1m sensitivity @ 1kHz, 250W RMS power rating, nominal 16 ohms, nominal 90x60 coverage pattern, rotatable horn, nominal -6dB frequency response of 60Hz-16kHz, with mounting hardware as required.
  - a. Biamp Community IC6-1082/96.
  - b. EAW MK8196I; or
  - c. ElectroVoice EVC-1082-96; or
  - d. JBL AC18/95; or
  - e. Approved equal.
  - f. Provide manufacturer's U-bracket with each loudspeaker.
  - g. Loudspeaker and mounting hardware color to be ordered as a custom color to be selected by the Architect.
  - h. Rotate horn as required to provide coverage as shown on the drawings.
3. Sub-bass Loudspeaker, single 18-inch diameter low frequency driver, with integral rigging points, 96 dB 1W/1m sensitivity @ 100Hz, 700W RMS power rating, nominal -6dB frequency response of 32-145Hz, with mounting hardware as required, black in color.
  - a. Biamp Community IS6-118; or
  - b. EAW SB180Z; or
  - c. ElectroVoice EVF-1181S; or
  - d. JBL ASB6118; or
  - e. Provide manufacturer's U-bracket with each loudspeaker.
  - f. Approved equal.
  - g. Loudspeaker and mounting hardware color to be ordered as a custom color to be selected by the Architect.
4. Portable Monitor Loudspeaker; self-powered; two-way assembly; constant directivity high-frequency horn or dual-concentric driver; 10-inch (nominal) low-frequency driver; black; with asymmetrical enclosure design to enable floor and other mounting configurations; integral pole mount cup; integral power amplifier; XLR input/output connectors; level control; with AC power cable.
  - a. Electro-Voice ELX200-10; or
  - b. QSC K10.2; or
  - c. Yamaha DXR10mkII; or
  - d. Approved equal.
5. Loudspeaker Support Stand, 100-pound support load rating, black in color.



- a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
  6. Only the latest versions of the loudspeakers in the above paragraphs shall be furnished. All loudspeakers provided for each type shall match in all respects.
  7. All loudspeakers and loudspeaker enclosures shall be supported from the building structure as designed by the Systems Contractor's structural engineer and as indicated on shop drawings submitted to Architect. Such devices installed into a T-bar/channel style ceiling shall have a load support tie-off to the building structure above and not rely on the ceiling support system for structural integrity.
  8. Where selected loudspeaker models are provided with line matching transformers that include power tap values that are different than the values shown on the drawings, use the available tap nearest to that shown on drawings. Indicate any such different power tap values on shop drawings submitted for review. If tap setting differences result in loads that exceed power amplifier capacity, provide additional power amplifier channel(s) and circuits as required. Submit revised circuiting and equipment requirements with shop drawings for review.
- H. Wireless Hearing Assistance Systems – Radio Frequency
1. Radio frequency wireless hearing assistance systems, all components of the same manufacturer.
    - a. Williams Sound Corporation.
  2. Hearing Assistance System (HAS) Transmitter, with Dante audio input, frequency selectable, with antenna, coaxial cable, power supply and rack mount kit as required.
    - a. Williams FM T55 D with ANT 034 remote antenna.
  3. Hearing Assistance Personal Receiver, frequency selectable, headphone output, with volume control, compatible with Base Station Transmitter chosen.
    - a. Williams PPA R37-8N receiver, with rechargeable batteries.
  4. Lightweight Earloop Headphones.
    - a. Williams EAR 022.
  5. Neck Loop Transducers.
    - a. Williams NKL 001.
  6. Charging/Storage Case, metal or molded shell, with integrated charger, with foam padded inserts, for housing Hearing Assistance System Receivers, Headphones, and Neck Loops.
    - a. Williams Sound CHG 3512 PRO.
  7. Provide a different operating frequency for each wireless hearing assistance transmitter system, free from interference, per FCC regulations Part 74, Subpart H. If required, assist the Owner in licensing these transmitter(s).
- I. Production Intercommunication Systems
1. Furnish a wireless partyline intercom system as shown on the drawings and as follows. Unless noted otherwise, furnish all components of system from Eartec.
  2. Wireless Intercom System, two-channel, eight user system operating on DECT frequency band (1880-1900 MHz), complete package including Base Station, power supply, six (6) single ear headsets, two (2) dual ear headsets, rechargeable lithium batteries, charging base, and soft-sided case.
    - a. Eartec HUB862.
  3. Wireless Intercom Headset Station replacement battery.
    - a. Eartec UltraLITE Headset Battery.
- J. Audio Accessories
1. Audio Cables, factory fabricated units, black flexible cable, with metal connectors and molded strain relief.
    - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
  2. Audio Adapters, factory fabricated units, metal shell.
    - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
  3. Isolation Transformers, transformer isolated, factory fabricated units, metal shell.
    - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
  4. Audio Adapter Pouch, black vinyl, with zipper.
    - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
  5. Instrument Direct Box, with ground lift switch, nominal -30 dB pad.
    - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
  6. Computer Direct Box, 1/8-inch stereo phone plug and two RCA phono unbalanced inputs, stereo XLR outputs, with ground lift switch.
    - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
  7. Stereo Headphones, dynamic dual headset, closed-back, reference quality, with coiled cord and 3-conductor phone plug.

- a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.

## 2.5 AUDIO-VISUAL SYSTEMS

### A. Cameras

1. Video Camera, motorized pan-tilt-zoom, 20x optical zoom, 60-degree horizontal field-of-view, PoE, with SDI output, compatible with digital audio processor.
  - a. QSC NC-20x60.

### B. Video Streaming/Recording

1. Video Streaming Appliance, SDI input, compatible with 1920x1080 input resolution, stereo audio inputs, H.264 streaming to cloud services, with integrated front panel controls and monitor, with remote control webpage interface.
  - a. Black Magic Web Presenter HD.
2. Video Recorder, SDI input, compatible with 1920x1080 input resolution, multi-format video recording, with integrated front panel controls and monitor, with remote control webpage interface.
  - a. Black Magic HyperDeck Studio HD Pro.
  - b. Provide two (2) 1 TB Solid State Drives compatible with device.
3. Network IPTV Encoder, SDI input, compatible with 1920x1080 input resolution, stereo audio inputs, H.264 or MPEG-2 streaming, with integrated front panel controls, with remote control webpage interface.
  - a. Contemporary Research QIP-SDI 2 IPTV Encoder.

### C. Video Distribution

1. Type 1 Network Video Input, wallplate form factor, HDMI input, PoE, gigabit LAN, 1920x1200 minimum resolution, compatible with Digital Audio Processor and Network Video Outputs.
  - a. Visionary Solutions E-WP-H.
2. Type 2 Network Video Input, surface mount form factor, HDMI input, PoE, gigabit LAN, 1920x1200 minimum resolution, compatible with Digital Audio Processor and Network Video Outputs.
  - a. Visionary Solutions E4200.
3. Type 1 Network Video Output, surface mount form factor, HDMI output, with Dante Audio output, PoE, gigabit LAN, 1920x1200 minimum resolution, compatible with Digital Audio Processor and Network Video Inputs.
  - a. Visionary Solutions DuetD-2 Decoder.
4. Type 2 Network Video Output, surface mount form factor, HDMI output, PoE, gigabit LAN, 1920x1200 minimum resolution, compatible with Digital Audio Processor and Network Video Inputs.
  - a. Visionary Solutions D4200 Decoder.
5. SDI Distribution Amplifier (DA), rack mounted form factor, SDI input, with minimum 4 SDI outputs, supporting 1920x1080 minimum resolution.
  - a. Black Magic Teranex Mini SDI Distribution.
6. Audio Embedder, rack mounted form factor, SDI input, stereo analog audio inputs, supporting 1920x1080 minimum resolution.
  - a. Black Magic Teranex Mini Audio to SDI.

### D. Video Projectors

1. Video Projector [OWNER PROVIDED], 1-chip DLP, native 1920x1200 resolution, minimum 11,000 ANSI lumens, HDMI input, laser light source, with horizontal and vertical lens shift, with interchangeable zoom lens as required.
  - a. Epson EB-PU2010B with ELPLM11 lens.
  - b. Black in color
  - c. Video Projectors and Lenses will be purchased/furnished by the Owner and turned over to the Systems Contractor for installation and integration with the specified systems. Except as otherwise noted, the Systems Contractor shall provide any and all mounting hardware, and shall properly configure the projectors for use with the audio-visual system.

### E. Projection Screens

1. Motorized Front Projection Screen, ceiling mounted, with heavy duty motor, controllable electric operation, with low voltage control switch mounted at stage proscenium, 16:9 screen ratio, 220 inches diagonal matte white front projection screen, 2 inches black border on all sides, with black drop above screen as required to locate bottom of screen at height as shown on the drawings.

- a. Da-Lite Tensioned Large Cosmopolitan Electrol with Da-Mat fabric; or
- b. Draper Premier XL with Matt White XT1000VB fabric.
- c. Projection screen case to be BLACK.
- d. Provide mounting hardware as required to mount screen in location shown on the drawings.
- e. Order screen reverse-rolled as required by mounting orientation.

F. Video Monitors

1. Rackmounted Monitor, dual 8-inch displays, with SDI inputs, compatible with 1920x1080 resolution input.
  - a. Black Magic Design SmartView Duo; or
  - b. Approved equal.

G. Audio-Visual Accessories

1. Video Projector Mount, compatible with projectors chosen above, with screw-actuated adjustment of pitch, yaw, and roll, and custom adapter plate.
  - a. Premier Mounts PDS series; or
  - b. Approved equal.
2. Video Projector/Video Camera Vibration Isolation Mount, compatible with Video Projector and Video Camera chosen above, with 1.5-inch NPT threaded connection, with mounting hardware as required.
  - a. Chief CMA345; or
  - b. Approved equal.
  - c. Provide extension pipe as required to mount projector in location shown on the drawings.
3. Video Projector Protection Cage, compatible with Video Projector chosen.
  - a. Legrand Chief PGA Series, size as required; or
  - b. Approved equal.
  - c. Black in color.
4. Video Camera Mount Enclosure, security mount enclosure, compatible with Video Camera, with 7.5" external clear dome lens, pole mount.
  - a. Dotworkz D2-BASE-BLK with 7.5" External Lens; or
  - b. Approved equal.
  - c. Black in color.
  - d. Provide mounting hardware accessories as required.
5. HDMI Extension Cable, factory fabricated units; black flexible cable, molded connectors, HDMI 2.0 compliant or better.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
6. Video Adapters, factory fabricated units; black flexible cable, molded connectors.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.

## 2.6 ETHERNET NETWORKS

A. Network Equipment

1. Ethernet Switch [OWNER PROVIDED], managed 10/100/1000Base-T switch, number of ports as required, POE+, fully compatible with Digital Audio Processor, rack mounted.
  - a. Cisco Catalyst series.
  - b. Network switches will be purchased/furnished by the Owner and turned over to the Systems Contractor for installation and integration with the specified systems. Except as otherwise noted, the Systems Contractor shall provide any and all mounting hardware, and shall assist with proper configuration of switches to ensure a properly operating AV network.
2. Ethernet Patch Panel.
  - a. Ortronics Clarity Rear-Load Panel Jack Kits, 48 Port Panel: 48-port, panel jack panel kit, flat, unloaded, 2 RU, Part: OR-PHDPJU48 Rear-load jacks part OR-PJ6-00 Black (Cat 6) and part OR-PJ6A-36 (Cat 6a). Blue. All slots/ports must be populated with jacks. Same type of jack per row. If needed, there could be 24 ports of Cat 6 and 24 ports of Cat 6a.
3. Type 1 Digital Network Extension Cable, factory fabricated units from ProCo, RapcoHorizon, Whirlwind, or equal, Category 5e industrial grade cable with ruggedized locking EtherCON RJ-45 connector on each end.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
4. Type 2 Digital Network Extension Cable, factory fabricated units from ProCo, RapcoHorizon, Whirlwind, or equal, Category 5e industrial grade cable with ruggedized locking EtherCON RJ-45 connector on one end and RJ-45 on the other.

- a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
- 5. All UTP field circuits shall terminate to appropriately labeled punchdown terminations (patch panels or biscuit jacks) installed in the equipment racks. Use factory fabricated patch cables between all punchdown terminations and the switches, and between all rack mounted equipment and switches.
- 6. All location labels are to be installed behind the factory transparent plastic protector clearly indicating the closet, panel and port number. For example, L-2-01 would represent Closet L, Panel 2, Port 01. Multiple ports on a field termination endpoint would be labeled as "L-2-01, L-2-02". Label numbers should be above the termination box ports and endpoint terminations should always start at the top of the endpoint termination box. Numbers should be sequential in order where possible.

## 2.7 AV CONTROL SYSTEMS

A. Refer to Audio/Video/Control Processing Equipment Section for additional requirements.

B. Software Applications

- 1. Digital Mixing Console Software, compatible with the Digital Mixing Console, with direct control over all features of devices including level adjustment, channel settings, and preset save and recall.
  - a. Assist the Owner with installation and configuration of software on up to five (5) Owner furnished computers or iOS devices.
- 2. Graphical User Interface Software, touchpanel graphical interface software, compatible with Digital Audio Processor.
  - a. Assist the Owner with installation and configuration of software on up to five (5) Owner furnished computers.
- 3. Dante Domain Manager
  - a. The Owner currently uses Dante Domain Manager to manage all Dante Devices on the network. Assist the Owner with configuration of all new Dante devices on the existing Dante Domain Manager. The Owner will be responsible for the purchase of licenses as required (if any).

## 2.8 CABLE AND CONNECTORS

A. Audio Cable

- 1. Microphone, intercom, and line-level audio circuits, where installed exposed in spaces which are used as return air plenums; #22 AWG, 2-conductor, stranded, aluminum polyester shielded.
  - a. Belden 9451P; or
  - b. Covid CSP 3200 22; or
  - c. Extron STP22P; or
  - d. Liberty 22-2C-PSH-WHT; or
  - e. Gepco IP222AL; or
  - f. West Penn 25291; or
  - g. Windy City Wire 994320-11S; or
  - h. Approved equal.
- 2. Microphone and intercom extension cables, where cable is exposed on audio console; 2-conductor, #24 AWG nominal, stranded, braid shielded, with black flexible jacket.
  - a. Belden 8413; or
  - b. Canare L-2T2S; or
  - c. Carol Cable 743704; or
  - d. Gepco MP1022; or
  - e. Mogami W2791; or
  - f. RapcoHorizon Mic3; or
  - g. Approved equal.
- 3. Line-level audio circuits, where installed exposed in spaces which are used as return air plenums; #22 AWG, 2-conductor, stranded, aluminum polyester shielded.
  - a. Belden 9451P; or
  - b. Covid CSP 3200 22; or
  - c. Extron STP22P; or
  - d. Liberty 22-2C-PSH-WHT; or
  - e. Gepco IP222AL; or
  - f. West Penn 25291; or
  - g. Windy City Wire 994320-11S; or
  - h. Approved equal.
- 4. Loudspeaker circuits installed in conduit, equipment rack, or exposed interior benign environment (except return air plenums); stranded, unshielded, jacketed. Cable color to approximately match ceiling color in exposed locations.

- a. #18 AWG, 2-conductors
  - 1) Belden 9740; or
  - 2) Covid CVA 0200 18; or
  - 3) Extron SPK18; or
  - 4) Liberty 18-2C-GRY; or
  - 5) Gepco IR182BA7; or
  - 6) West Penn 224; or
  - 7) Windy City Wire 427100-11S; or
  - 8) Approved equal.
- b. #16 AWG, 2-conductors
  - 1) Belden 8471; or
  - 2) Covid CVA 0200 16; or
  - 3) Extron SPK16; or
  - 4) Liberty 16-2C-GRY; or
  - 5) Gepco IR162BA19; or
  - 6) West Penn 225; or
  - 7) Windy City Wire 8160219-02S; or
  - 8) Approved equal.
- c. #14 AWG, 2-conductors
  - 1) Belden 8473; or
  - 2) Covid CVA 0200 14; or
  - 3) Extron SPK14; or
  - 4) Liberty 14-2C-GRY; or
  - 5) Gepco IR142BA19; or
  - 6) West Penn 226; or
  - 7) Windy City Wire U029100-11S; or
  - 8) Approved equal.
- d. #12 AWG, 2-conductors
  - 1) Belden 8477; or
  - 2) Covid CVA 0200 12; or
  - 3) Liberty 12-2C-GRY; or
  - 4) Gepco IR122BA19; or
  - 5) West Penn 227; or
  - 6) Windy City Wire U023100-11S; or
  - 7) Approved equal.
5. Loudspeaker circuits, where installed exposed above ceilings in spaces which are used as return air plenums; 2-conductor, stranded, unshielded.
  - a. #18 AWG
    - 1) Belden 6300UE; or
    - 2) Covid CVA 3200 18; or
    - 3) Extron SPK18P; or
    - 4) Gepco IP182BA7; or
    - 5) West Penn 25224; or
    - 6) Windy City Wire 992360-11S; or
    - 7) Approved equal.
  - b. #16 AWG
    - 1) Belden 6200UE; or
    - 2) Covid CVA 3200 16; or
    - 3) Extron SPK16P; or
    - 4) Gepco IP162BA19; or
    - 5) West Penn 25225; or
    - 6) Windy City Wire 991360-S; or
    - 7) Approved equal.
  - c. #14 AWG
    - 1) Belden 6100UE; or
    - 2) Covid CVA 3200 14; or
    - 3) Extron SPK14P; or
    - 4) Gepco IP142BA19; or
    - 5) West Penn 25226; or
    - 6) Windy City Wire 997960-S; or
    - 7) Approved equal.
  - d. #12 AWG, 2-conductors
    - 1) Belden 6000UE; or
    - 2) Approved equal.
    - 3) 10 AWG, 2-conductors
    - 4) Belden 6T00UE; or

- 5) Approved equal.

**B. Antenna Cable**

1. Wireless Microphone System antenna cable, when antenna is remotely mounted, if length is less than 50 feet.
  - a. Belden 8219; or
  - b. Liberty RG58-CMR-BLK; or
  - c. West Penn 813; or
  - d. Windy City Wire 9658111-S; or
  - e. Approved equal.
2. Wireless Microphone System antenna cable when antenna is remotely mounted and length is greater than 25 feet, polyfoam type RG213/U 50 ohm coaxial.
  - a. Belden 8267; or
  - b. West Penn 810; or
  - c. Approved equal.
3. Hearing Assistance System antenna cable, when antenna is remotely mounted, if length is less than 50 feet, braid and foil shield, RG-59/U, 75 ohms.
  - a. Belden 1505A; or
  - b. Covid CVD 1100 95F; or
  - c. Liberty AV 20-CMR-VIDEO; or
  - d. Sheerwire SVHD59R; or
  - e. West Penn 819; or
  - f. Windy City Wire 9659113-09S.
4. Hearing Assistance System antenna cable, when antenna is remotely mounted and length is greater than 50 feet, type RG-6/U, 75 ohms.
  - a. Belden 1695A; or
  - b. Covid COV 3100 CQ; or
  - c. Liberty AV RG6-QUAD-CMP; or
  - d. West Penn 25Q841; or
  - e. Windy City Wire 606224-S; or
  - f. Approved equal.

**C. Video Cable**

1. Type 1 SDI Distribution Cable, coaxial, 75 ohms, type RG-6/U for all 3G-SDI distribution circuits 150 feet or less, dual foil and braid shield, where installed in conduit and benign interior environments.
  - a. Belden 1694A; or
  - b. Commscope 5765; or
  - c. Gepco VSD2001; or
  - d. West Penn 6350; or
  - e. Approved equal.
2. Type 2 SDI Distribution Cable, coaxial, 75 ohms, type RG-11/U for all 3G-SDI distribution circuits 150 feet or more, dual foil and braid shield, where installed in conduit and benign interior environments.
  - a. Belden 7731A; or
  - b. Gepco VHD1100; or
  - c. Approved equal.
3. HDMI Video Cable, for use in lecterns and equipment racks, factory-made, male to male HDMI molded connectors.
  - a. Comprehensive HD-HD-XXPROBLK series; or
  - b. Covid P-HD 24 series; or
  - c. Extron HDMI Ultra series; or
  - d. Liberty Wire E-HDM-M series; or
  - e. Planet Waves HDMI series; or
  - f. West Penn CN-40HDMI series; or
  - g. Approved equal.

**D. Control Cable**

1. Control System Cable, twisted pair, compatible with control system equipment chosen

- a. Belden 1502P; or
- b. Covid COM 1400; or
- c. Crestron Crestnet-NP; or
- d. Extron CTL; or
- e. Gepco 18/22CRT; or
- f. Liberty AXLINK; or
- g. West Penn 77350.

E. Data Communication Cable

- 1. Provide cables as specified herein and in accordance with the technical provisions of Section 271300 Communications Backbone Cabling and district standards and requirements.
- 2. Category 6 UTP Cable, unshielded twisted pair, plenum rated.
  - a. Superior Essex Datagain 6+ CMP 66-240-DB.
  - b. All data cable installed for AV systems shall be color-coded Orange.
  - c. Factory-made and certified Category 6 cable shall be used for all UTP patch cables installed within equipment racks and connections to AV equipment. No field fabricated patch cables shall be used.
- 3. Category 6 Patch Cable, unshielded twisted pair, factory fabricated.
  - a. Ortronics Clarity 6 Modular Patch Cable Series.
  - b. All data cable installed for AV systems shall be color-coded Orange.
- 4. The data communications cabling infrastructure shall be installed in accordance with the following applicable industry standards
  - a. BICSI: Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM), latest edition.
  - b. TIA/EIA-568-C: Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard.
  - c. EIA/TIA-569B: Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and spaces.
  - d. TIA/EIA-606: Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings.

F. Audio Connectors

- 1. XLR cable connectors, metal shell with strain relief, with solder cups.
  - a. Neutrik X series; or
  - b. Switchcraft AAA Series.
- 2. XLR receptacles, metal, with solder cups. Panel mounting receptacles shall be square in shape, except as noted.
  - a. Neutrik DLX series; or
  - b. Switchcraft E Series.
- 3. Phono RCA connectors, cable mounting, metal shell, with solder cups.
  - a. Canare; or
  - b. Rean; or
  - c. Switchcraft.
- 4. Phono RCA receptacles, metal shell, insulated from panel.
  - a. Canare; or
  - b. Rean; or
  - c. Switchcraft.
- 5. Loudspeaker Connectors, number of conductors as required, twist-lock action, panel or cable mounting.
  - a. Neutrik SpeakON series; or
  - b. Switchcraft HPC series.

G. Video Connectors

- 1. BNC Video Connector, 75 ohm, compression fit, crimp type connectors acceptable only in factory assemblies.
  - a. Extron Compression Connectors; or
  - b. Liberty ConnecTec; or
  - c. Neutrik rearTWIST Connectors; or
  - d. Approved equal.

H. Miscellaneous Connectors

- 1. EtherCON Jack, CAT6A rated, shielded, panel mount, pass through RJ45 jacks, field terminable, with latch lock, square in shape, compatible with EtherCON Connector below.
  - a. Neutrik NE8FDX-Y6-B.
- 2. EtherCON Connector, CAT6A rated, field assembled, metal shell, compatible with EtherCON Jacks above.

- a. Neutrik NE8MX6-B.
3. PowerCON Jack, 20A rated, panel mount, pass through RJ45 jacks, field terminable, with latch lock, different keyed input and output connectors, square in shape, compatible with PowerCON Connector below.
  - a. Input: Neutrik NAC3MPXXA (Blue).
  - b. Output: Neutrik NAC3MPXXB (Gray).
4. PowerCON Connector, 20A rated, field assembled, plastic locking shell, different keyed input and output connectors, compatible with PowerCON Jacks above.
  - a. Input: Neutrik NAC3FCA-1 (Blue).
  - b. Output: Neutrik NAC3FCB-1 (Gray).

## 2.9 EQUIPMENT RACKS, CABINETS, AND ACCESSORIES

### A. Equipment Racks and Carts

1. Floor Standing Swing-out Rack, 32-inch nominal depth, black color, side panels, with quiet exhaust fan top, with vented locking front door.
  - a. Lowell LWBR-4032 with LFD-40FV door and FW4-7 fan top; or
  - b. Approved equal.
2. Audio Cart, ATA rated flight case, with removeable front, back, and top lid, with slide-out flat desktop, with foam inserts for the Digital Mixing Console, with three (3) 12 RU equipment rack bays, locking casters.
  - a. Olympic Case Customized MRRK-AT00059, Quote 00012464.
  - b. Submit shop drawings of complete design for approval prior to ordering.
3. Lighting Cart, ATA rated flight case, with removeable front, back, and top lid, with slide-out flat desktop, with foam inserts for the Lighting Console (ION 20XE), with full width 10-inch deep storage drawer, with three (3) equipment rack bays, locking casters.
  - a. Olympic Case Customized MRRK-AT00059, Quote 00012464.
  - b. Submit shop drawings of complete design for approval prior to ordering.
4. Equipment Rack Storage Drawer, size as indicated on the rack layout drawings, steel, with key lock, black to match equipment racks.
  - a. BGW SRD Series with keylock; or
  - b. Lowell UDP Series; or
  - c. Middle Atlantic D Series with keylock; or
  - d. Install drawers in the equipment racks as shown on the rack layout drawings.
5. Sliding Shelf, 1RU, steel, ball bearing slides, minimum 50-lbs capacity, black to match equipment racks
  - a. AtlasIED VTD1-16; or
  - b. Legrand SLS-1; or
  - c. Lowell RSD-116.
  - d. Install shelves as shown on the rack layout drawings.
6. Furnish small magnetic portable work light with LED bulb and gooseneck in each equipment rack.
  - a. Middle Atlantic LT-GN-WL; or
  - b. Approved equal.
7. USB LED work light.
  - a. Middle Atlantic LT-GN-PL.
8. Configure adjustable rack rails inside equipment racks as necessary for proper clearance for cable routing and front mounted controls.
9. All racks shall be keyed alike if possible.
10. All standard sized rack panels used to mount controls or connectors shall have formed edges. Rack panel mounting screws shall be as short as practical for equipment to be mounted (Middle Atlantic HPQ or similar).
11. Any rack front panel details shown on the drawings are for concept only. Shop drawings are required indicating the exact equipment to be furnished. The exact size (larger or taller racks) and quantity of equipment racks is to be determined by the Systems Contractor based upon the exact equipment to be furnished. Verify all audio equipment room dimensions and conditions.
12. Except as noted on the drawings, include a 1RU panel at the top of one equipment rack engraved with the logo and contact information of the Acoustical Consultant and the Systems Contractor.
13. Except as noted on the drawings, allow 1¾-inch blank panel space at the top of each rack, minimum 3½-inch vent panel space at the bottom of each rack, and ventilation space (vent panels) between all equipment. Fill any empty rack space that is not near equipment with blank panels. Except as noted on



the drawings or for mounting switches or LED indicators, blank panels shall not be used between equipment.

14. Where applicable, install a brush grommet panel directly above equipment such as an Ethernet Switch to allow cables to pass from the back of the equipment rack to the front panel of equipment (Middle Atlantic BR1 or similar).
15. Equipment with deep front panel connectors or controls (such as Ethernet Switches) that interfere with a front door or pose a potential hazard shall be installed on rack rail recess adapters (Middle Atlantic RR2-3RCN or similar).
16. Where applicable, mount small components behind vent panels on sub-chassis shelves or component panels (BUD CB series chassis or similar). Mount components with connections visible from rear of equipment rack using barrier strip terminal blocks for connections.
17. The following guidelines concerning equipment rack layouts shall be followed. Submit shop drawings illustrating proposed equipment rack layouts, indicating equipment labels.
  - a. Equipment Rack Layouts shall be grouped according to function; audio, video, and control.
  - b. Heavy equipment such as audio amplifiers, large video matrix switches, and UPSs shall be placed near the bottom of equipment racks.
  - c. Control equipment shall be located near the top of equipment racks.
  - d. Equipment that requires operator interface (e.g. sound reinforcement system AC power pushbuttons, sound reinforcement system mode select switches, power amplifier monitor/test system, monitor loudspeaker, computer monitor and keyboard, patch panels, audio mixers, program source and/or audio-visual equipment) shall be installed in one or adjacent equipment racks. Operator interface equipment shall also be installed at heights that permit ease of operation and viewing. Such equipment shall be placed in equipment rack(s) closest to the audio equipment room entrance.

#### B. Hardware and Accessories

1. Table Connection Box, number (#) of gangs as required, with sloped face and cable exit at back.
  - a. Ace Backstage 147G#; or
  - b. Extron SMB 11#; or
  - c. FSR Inc. DSKB-#G.
  - d. Coordinate mounting conditions with existing conditions, millwork, and as determined during commissioning. Where left loose, provide rubber feet for the box.
2. Surface Mounted Wallboxes, standard gang size, used as the backbox for connection plates where standard electrical boxes cannot be flush mounted in wall, steel construction, paintable.
  - a. Extron EWB 10#; or
  - b. FSR Inc. SMWB-#G.
3. Surface Mounted Raceway, steel construction, paintable, with surface mounted boxes, raceway, and fitting sizes as required.
  - a. Legrand Wiremold; or
  - b. Equal.
4. Surface Mounted Wireway, plastic construction, with cover, size as shown on the drawings.
  - a. Panduit PANDUCT; or
  - b. Equal.
5. Threaded Pipe, cold rolled steel, 1.5 inch NPT size.
  - a. Provide length as required to mount devices as shown on drawings.
6. Unistrut, slotted metal framing, steel construction, member sizes and fittings as required.
  - a. All channel members shall be fabricated conforming to one of the following ASTM specifications:
    - 1) Plain Carbon Steel: ASTM 1011 SS Grade 33
    - 2) Pre-Galvanized Carbon Steel: A 653 Grade 33
  - b. All fittings shall be fabricated conforming to one of the following ASTM specifications:
  - c. Carbon Steel: All carbon steel fittings shall be fabricated from steel that meets/exceeds the physical requirements of ASTM A1011 SS Grade 33 and conforms to one of the following ASTM specifications:
    - 1) ASTM 575.
    - 2) ASTM 576.
    - 3) ASTM 36.
    - 4) ASTM 635.
    - 5) ASTM1059.
    - 6) ASTM 1046.

- d. Finishes
  - 1) Factory painted with rust inhibiting thermoset acrylic enamel paint applied by electro-deposition after cleaning and phosphating, and thoroughly baked.
  - 2) Polyester powder coat after cleaning and phosphating, and thoroughly baked.
  - 3) Electro-galvanized per ASTM B 633 Type III SC 1.
  - 4) Pre-galvanized per ASTM A653.
  - 5) Hot-dipped Galvanized per ASTM A123 or A153.
- 7. Type 1 Barrier Strip, for termination of audio circuits in equipment rack where shown on the drawings and/or needed for transition between cable types.
  - a. TRW-CINCH 140 series; or approved equal.
- 8. Type 2 Barrier Strip, high-density, for termination of loudspeaker circuits where shown on the drawings and/or needed for transition between cable types.
  - a. Phoenix Contact High-Density UK series; or approved equal.
- 9. Spade Tongue Terminal, brazed seam, uninsulated type only.

## 2.10 AC POWER

- A. Furnish modular vertical power strip in each Equipment Rack with number of circuits and corresponding color-coded always-on and sequenced outlets as required. Each rack shall have at least four spare always-on receptacles. Furnish additional power distribution equipment as required for all equipment racks.
- B. Furnish an Uninterruptible Power Supply for the following equipment.
  - 1. Digital Audio Processors.
  - 2. Digital Mixing Consoles.
  - 3. Ethernet Switches.
  - 4. Control Systems and accessories.
- C. Furnish power conditioning and surge suppression for all major video, audio, and network equipment not served by a UPS. Video Projectors may be excluded; the branch circuits serving this equipment will be conditioned and protected by centralized equipment provided by others.
- D. Connect power amplifiers to 120V 20A AC power circuits so that maximum rated input power can be delivered to each power amplifier without exceeding the power handling capacity of any AC power circuit.
- E. Any power distribution details shown on the drawings are for concept only. Shop drawings are required indicating the exact equipment to be furnished by the Systems Contractor.
- F. AC Power Equipment
  - 1. Modular Vertical Power Strip, single or multiple 20A circuits, with isolated ground, with surge suppression modules, remote control modules, and standard outlet modules as indicated on the drawings.
    - a. Legrand Middle Atlantic MPR Series; or
    - b. Lowell PowerStac Series.
  - 2. AC Power Modules, compatible with Modular Vertical Power Strip above.
    - a. 20A with Surge Suppression.
      - 1) Legrand Middle Atlantic M-20A-SP.
      - 2) Lowell PowerStac Module BD.
    - b. 20A Standard.
      - 1) Legrand Middle Atlantic M-20A.
      - 2) Lowell PowerStac Module 4.
  - 3. Power Module, 15A, rack-mount, with unswitched front panel convenience outlet, with surge suppression and power conditioning, with front mounted lights.
    - a. Furman PL-8 C; or
    - b. Juice Goose RP 200; or
    - c. Approved equal.
  - 4. Uninterruptible Power Supply [OWNER PROVIDED], line-interactive, 1440VA, 2 RU, rackmounted as required, with network management and monitoring card.

- a. APC Smart-UPS SMX1500RM2UC with AP9641.
  - b. UPS will be purchased/furnished by the Owner and turned over to the Systems Contractor for installation and integration with the specified systems. Except as otherwise noted, the Systems Contractor shall provide any and all mounting hardware, and shall assist with proper configuration of the UPS management card.
- 5. Type 1 AC Power Extension Cable, NEMA 5-15R to NEMA 5-15P, 15A, black in color.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
- 6. Type 2 AC Power Extension Cable, NEMA 5-15R to powerCON, 15A, black in color.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.
- 7. Type 3 AC Power Extension Cable, powerCON to powerCON, 15A, black in color.
  - a. Refer to Portable Equipment Schedule at the end of these specifications.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL

- A. Installation and connection of audio-visual communication system equipment, materials, cable, and cable fittings shall be performed only by experienced audio-visual communication system installers. Each installer shall have access to a complete copy of the specifications at the job site.
- B. All materials and equipment are to be installed in accordance with all applicable standards of the National Electrical Code, the Electrical Code of the governing local municipality, all other applicable local codes, and all safety codes and ordinances.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment rack sheet metal ground shall only be via the insulated ground cable(s) noted on the drawings. Racks shall not otherwise connect to building steel or electrical conduit which is grounded to the building electrical system. Adjacent equipment racks shall be connected by an insulated #6 AWG ground cable which is bonded to each equipment rack.
- B. All adjacent equipment racks shall be ganged together if applicable.
- C. All equipment racks shall be restrained and seismic rated as required by local code.
- D. Racks shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to turn over to the Owner.
- E. Rear rack rails shall be installed as required to support heavy or deep equipment.
- F. Lacing bars shall be installed to assist in organizing cable. Lacing bars shall not interfere with access to any terminations or connectors.
- G. Cable within equipment racks shall be separated and routed in groups according to function: microphone circuits, intercom circuits, line level audio circuits, loudspeaker circuits, video circuits, control circuits, and 120 volt AC power circuits. Cable shall be neatly arranged, but tight bundling which makes modifications difficult shall be avoided. Plastic or Velcro cable ties shall be used for grouping of circuits. Unless otherwise noted on the drawings, all cables shall enter the equipment racks in one of the following manners:
  - 1. Through conduit landed directly to the equipment rack.
  - 2. Through rack knock-outs on the top or back of the equipment rack with plastic or rubber grommets.
  - 3. Directly into the back of wall mounted equipment racks. The rack shall be installed over flush mounted junction boxes allowing all cables to pass directly from the junction box into the back of the rack.
  - 4. Directly into an open side of floor standing equipment racks without side panels.
  - 5. Directly into the bottom of floor standing equipment racks through access floor holes or conduit in the floor. The rack shall be installed above the conduit stub or hole allowing all cables to pass directly into the bottom of the rack. All conduit stubs or access floor holes shall also have a plastic or rubber bushing to protect the cables.

- H. Cable in conduit or other raceway shall be separated according to function: microphone circuits and intercom circuits, line level audio circuits, loudspeaker circuits, video circuits, control circuits, and 120 volt AC power circuits. Control circuits may be installed in line level audio conduit where separate control conduit is not indicated on the drawings. Control circuits for loudspeaker volume control priority override relays may be installed with loudspeaker circuits. Intercom circuits may be installed in line level audio conduit where microphone level conduit is not installed.
- I. Any grouping of cables left exposed in a room, such as those associated with a movable equipment rack, shall be bundled together into a single bunch using black, flexible and expandable sleeving such as Techflex Flexo Wrap or equivalent.
- J. At all connection points for all types of cable, self-laminating or heat shrink printed labels of appropriate letters and/or numbers shall be installed near each termination point and be clearly visible. The labels shall be consistent on both ends of the same cable. These cable numbers and/or letters shall be given to the Acoustical Consultant for inclusion on the one-line diagrams of record.
- K. Care shall be exercised in wiring so as not to damage cables and equipment. Circuits shall not be spliced except as approved on shop drawings.
- L. Where conduit connects between equipment rack locations, or between sound console and equipment racks, at least two spare circuits of each type in the conduit (microphone level, line level, control, or data communications) shall be installed in each conduit used. All spare circuit conductors shall be connected to chassis ground at the downstream (e.g. power amplifier) end of the cable.
- M. All field cabling shall have service loops to allow for at least two (2) re-terminations.
- N. All crimp type connectors, including insulated butt connectors for inline loudspeaker circuit connections, shall be crimped with a Thomas & Betts model WT111M tool. Spade tongue terminals shall be crimped with the notch on the barrel opposite the seam.
- O. Unless otherwise noted, all audio circuits shall be two wire with shield, with the red or white wire used for the "high" side of the line and connected to pin 2 of microphone connectors or to the "tip" of patch panel and other phone jacks. The black wire shall be used for the "low" side of the line and shall connect to pin 3 of microphone connectors or to the "ring" of phone jacks. The shield (drain) wire shall connect to pin 1 of microphone connectors or to the sleeve of phone jacks.
- P. All audio circuits (red or white and black conductors) shall be ungrounded except as provided by single ended amplifier inputs and where grounding of unbalanced circuits is directed during system tests. Shields for line level audio circuits shall be grounded to rack sheet metal at each cable termination. Where line level audio circuits connect to audio transformers, shields shall connect to transformer electrostatic shields and case grounds. At each cable termination shield or shield drain, wire length shall be approximately equal to the length of the insulated conductors. Shield drain wires shall be sheathed in green PVC sleeving. Circuit shields shall not otherwise connect to each other nor ground to electrical conduit at wall boxes, etc. Microphone circuit shields shall be grounded only at mixer inputs.
- Q. Where resistors are indicated to terminate an audio circuit, install each resistor at the end of the line at the input to the following transformer or amplifier.
- R. All wire joints and connections in the audio system shall be made with rosin core solder and a small soldering iron; or with approved mechanical connectors. Soldering shall be neat and shall not exhibit "cold" solder joints. Connections to screw type terminals shall be made with mechanically connected, uninsulated, spade type lugs selected for the particular wire size in use.
- S. Connections made with miniature screw actuated, phoenix type connectors shall be made by stripping approximately ¼-inch of insulation from stranded conductor, inserting the untinned wire into the pressure terminal, and tightening the terminal screw using a small screwdriver which securely fits the screw head.
- T. High impedance unbalanced audio circuits shall not extend more than 20 feet.
- U. Loudspeaker connections within loudspeaker enclosures (and at other in-line locations where necessary) shall be made with crimped insulated butt connectors. Wire nuts and/or electrical tape will not be allowed.

- V. Loudspeakers shall be installed so there are no obstructions to the loudspeaker coverage pattern. Loudspeakers shall be connected "in phase" and proper impedance matching shall be maintained between amplifiers and loudspeakers.
- W. Tie-wrap and secure all loudspeaker line matching transformer leads and loudspeaker cable away from loudspeakers to prevent "rattling" when loudspeakers are energized.
- X. All loudspeakers, projectors, and any other equipment suspended overhead shall be installed by a qualified rigging technician following manufacturer's installation guidelines for all rigging components and as indicated on the approved shop drawings. Any changes made to the rigging design during installation shall be updated on the project record as-built drawings and re-approved by the Systems Contractor's structural engineer.
- Y. All loudspeakers, projectors, and other equipment suspended overhead shall be installed with wire rope safety ties connected to the building structure as shown and approved on the submitted shop drawings.
- Z. All analog video circuits, except as indicated otherwise, shall be shielded 75-ohm coaxial cable. Shields for video circuits shall be grounded only at the connected equipment and shall not ground at electrical conduit at wall boxes, etc.
- AA. All analog video connections shall be made with a specified BNC type connector. The BNC plug center pin shall be crimped with a Trompeter 010-0055 or Buchanan 613439 crimp tool.
- BB. No field terminated digital video connectors will be permitted unless otherwise noted in these specifications or drawings (HDMI, DVI, DisplayPort).
- CC. No soldering of video connectors will be permitted.
- DD. All non-locking video connectors shall be secured to the installed equipment such that the connectors cannot be easily disturbed or disconnected.
- EE. All HDMI, DisplayPort and DVI cables shall not exceed 25 feet in length without the installation of an active HDMI or DVI Cable Equalizer, with the exception of cables terminating or originating at equipment which features integral cable equalization. These cables shall be limited in length as indicated by the equipment manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.3 NAMEPLATES AND CONNECTION PLATES

- A. All nameplate nomenclature shall be reviewed by the Architect and Acoustical Consultant prior to panel or plate engraving; or Metal-photo processing.
- B. All control panels, all patch panels, and all controls, jacks, microphone receptacles, switches, etc. (except for controls, etc., on audio equipment which are properly identified by the manufacturer) shall be suitably identified by metal or plastic engraved labels or Metal-photo labels. Engraved panels or plates shall be filled with a suitable contrasting color as approved on shop drawings.
- C. Room numbers shown on drawings and indicated on control panel details, patch panels, etc., are architectural room numbers for identification only during the construction phase. Fabricated labels shall reflect the room numbers to be later assigned by the Owner and/or as designated by the Architect.
- D. All installed and portable equipment shall be identified on front and rear panels by nameplate labels as indicated on the drawings and approved in the shop drawings, or as directed on-site by the Owner, Architect, and/or Acoustical Consultant.
- E. Unless noted otherwise, standard gang connection panels shall be Sierra stainless steel wall plates, or color as selected by Architect.
- F. Unless noted otherwise, NEMA size connection panels shall be clear anodized brushed aluminum, or color as selected by Architect.
  - 1. 12-inches or smaller: 1/8-inch thick.
  - 2. Larger than 12-inches: 3/16-inch thick.
  - 3. Field-verify mounting conditions for each box. Flush mounted plates shall have a minimum 1/2-inch flange on all sides.

- G. All connection panels shall have countersunk screw holes and Phillips countersunk or oval-head screws finished to match the panel. All lettering shall be engraved and filled directly on the panel. Regardless of panel color, all panel mounted connectors should match the finish color of the panel wherever possible.
- H. All standard sized rack panels used to mount controls or connectors shall have formed edges, with all lettering engraved and filled directly on the panel.
- I. Verify all dimensions and spacing for panel-mounted components and engraving. Unless noted otherwise, engraved text shall be 3/16-inch high. Spacing between panel-mounted components shall be sufficient to enable front cable connections to be made easily.
- J. Connection panel layouts shall be according to function with all connections of one type located together. Labels shall be located above the corresponding connector or component. All connection panels and nameplates on the project shall be uniform in layout and nomenclature. Microphone multipin connectors shall be placed at the bottom of connection panels.
- K. No wall or floor mounted connection panels shall carry the logo of the contractor's firm.
- L. All nameplates and patch panel labels shall reflect Alternates accepted or rejected.
- M. Submit shop drawings for each connection panel with all connections, devices, labels, colors and sized clearly indicated.

### 3.4 PAINTING

- A. Paint all exposed hardware, loudspeakers, baffles, wall plates, and any other item furnished under this contract not specifically noted otherwise on the drawings, color and method as selected and approved by the Architect.
- B. Any custom painting of loudspeakers shall be done at the factory or other controlled environment using spray or powder-coat process without damage to components or blocking grille openings. Except as otherwise noted herein, painting with brush or roller is not acceptable. Verify all finishes with Architect and indicate on shop drawings submitted for review.

### 3.5 PRELIMINARY SYSTEM TESTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

- A. The Systems Contractor shall be responsible for preliminary field tests and adjustments of the completed audio-visual communication systems prior to the time reserved for system equalization. Circuits containing equalizers and resistors to be installed later may be strapped across to permit preliminary system testing. Such tests shall be made in conformance with the recommendations of the equipment manufacturer and Acoustical Consultant.
- B. Preliminary system tests and adjustments shall include but not be limited to the following
  - 1. Verification that all loudspeakers are properly installed, tapped, and circuited as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Measurement of each loudspeaker line impedance to verify that no short/open circuits exist (including shorts to conduit/ground) and proper/expected loads are connected.
  - 3. Testing of each loudspeaker to ascertain that none of the units "squawk" or "rattle" when energized with one-third octave bands of pink noise at a nominal input power of two watts.
  - 4. Phasing of all microphones, microphone cables, and microphone inputs.
  - 5. Alignment, convergence and source input settings for each video projector and flat panel display.
  - 6. Verification that each display meets the following criteria: a minimum resolution compatibility of 1920x1080 @ 60Hz, HDCP compliance where required, appropriate color reproduction, and confirmation that the number of malfunctioning pixels does not exceed the manufacturer's tolerance.
  - 7. Qualification of all Category-type field cabling.
  - 8. Functional tests of all individual audio and video equipment
  - 9. Functional tests of all control equipment and custom user interfaces. All control communication shall be verified and tested to perform the functions listed in these specifications and detailed in the custom touchpanel interface.
  - 10. Setup of all dedicated networks, including assignment of appropriate IP addresses for all equipment, setup of any DHCP servers and wireless access points, and switch configuration.
  - 11. Unbox, assemble, test, and all store portable equipment where appropriate.

12. Installation of the latest product firmware and software.
  13. Functional tests of the installed system(s) as required to assure that the system(s) are ready for final tests and adjustments.
- C. The Systems Contractor shall be responsible for notifying the Acoustical Consultant of any unresolved malfunctions encountered during preliminary system tests and of any equipment not at the site sufficiently prior to system equalization.
- D. Most of the final tests and adjustments will be performed concurrently with system equalization. However, if troubles are encountered, preliminary tests and adjustments shall continue until the system operates in a satisfactory manner.

### 3.6 FINAL SYSTEM TESTS AND EQUALIZATION (COMMISSIONING SERVICES)

#### A. Sound Systems

1. The process is termed system "tuning" or "equalization" and is accomplished after the completion of the system installation, but prior to any use of the audio-visual communication system. At this time, it is possible to measure the acoustic response of the system and to determine the feedback frequencies that actually exist. The broadband and narrowband filters are then tuned to these specific conditions.
2. To achieve proper acoustic levels and aiming, select loudspeaker transformers may require re-tapping and select loudspeakers or loudspeaker clusters may require reorientation as directed by the Acoustical Consultant.
3. After the sound reinforcement system(s) has received its preliminary testing and is found to be operating correctly, without hum, distortion, oscillations, radio frequency interference, etc., all equipment is fully functioning, and all circuits and connections have been examined, the system shall be commissioned and configured, including, but not limited to, the following adjustments:
  - a. Adjustment of all gain controls to proper levels.
  - b. Equalization of the loudspeaker systems using broadband graphic or parametric equalizers, delays, and compressors/limiters.
  - c. Equalization of each installed wired and wireless microphone using broadband graphic or parametric equalizers and any applicable dynamics.
  - d. Proper setup of any automatic mixer processing.
  - e. Proper setup of all wireless microphone systems, including coordination of all wireless microphone frequencies.
  - f. Configuration of the mixing console with input from the Owner.
  - g. Configuration of narrowband equalizers to minimize microphone feedback in the system.

#### B. Audio-Visual Systems

1. After the audio-visual system(s) has received its preliminary testing and is found to be operating correctly, all video displays are fully operational, all equipment is functioning properly, and all circuits and connections have been examined, the system shall be commissioned and configured, including, but not limited to, the following adjustments:
  - a. Configuration of all EDID and HDCP settings for each source and display.
  - b. Proper setup of all video scalars.
  - c. Proper setup of each display for color and brightness.
  - d. Adjustment of camera image settings and configuration of any pan/tilt/zoom presets.
  - e. Configuration of recording systems.
  - f. Configuration of streaming video systems.

#### C. Networking and Control Systems

1. After the networking and control system(s) has received its preliminary testing and is found to be operating correctly, all control interfaces are fully operational, all equipment is functioning properly, and all circuits and connections have been examined, the system shall be commissioned and configured, including, but not limited to, the following adjustments:

- a. Verification of all specified control operations.
  - b. Verification and adjustment of all user control interfaces for proper operation, with input from the Owner for custom interfaces.
  - c. Verification of all control software installations.
  - d. Verification of a proper Ethernet network configuration.
- D. The Systems Contractor shall furnish the services of a competent technician, one having knowledge of the system, to adjust the audio-visual communication system equipment and connections as requested by the Acoustical Consultant during the time reserved for system equalization. It is estimated that this technician should be available for approximately eight (8) 11-hour days for the Base Bid.
- E. These periods of time will be used for equalization and final system tests and adjustments. They will not, however, include the time that might have to be expended in the correction of system wiring errors, improper system performance due to noise, oscillations, etc. The Systems Contractor shall make his own assessment of the total time required for the technician referenced above.
- F. If, in the opinion of the Acoustical Consultant, the system does not appear to be functioning properly, the Systems Contractor may be required to perform tests on any individual item of equipment to determine its operational status. Any measurements deemed necessary shall be made for frequency response, distortion, etc.
- G. If after maximum effort by all concerned, it should prove impossible to complete the equalization within the stipulated period, the technician shall be made available for additional hours at no additional cost to the Owner if the Acoustical Consultant feels such assistance is necessary.
- H. The commissioning services shall be provided for the Owner by AVANT ACOUSTICS, the Acoustical Consultant. The cost of these services shall, as a convenience to the Owner, be included by the Systems Contractor as a portion of the total cost of the audio-visual communication system work. This commissioning fee shall be requested from the Acoustical Consultant prior to submitting any bid proposal. The Systems Contractor shall execute a letter of agreement concerning this service with the Acoustical Consultant prior to the review of shop drawings.

### 3.7 SYSTEM WARRANTY AND MAINTENANCE

- A. The Systems Contractor shall warrant the audio-visual communication system against defects in materials and workmanship, including any required parts and labor, during a one year warranty period from date of final acceptance or first beneficial use, whichever occurs first, of the completed audio-visual communication system at no cost to the Owner.
- B. The Systems Contractor shall make at least two visits to the job site to determine that all equipment is functioning satisfactorily, and to perform any maintenance services that may be required. The first of these visits shall occur approximately six months after the commencement of the warranty period, and the second visit shall occur approximately six months thereafter, but prior to the end of the warranty period.
- C. Maintenance services requiring additional visits shall also be performed at no charge. Maintenance services shall consist of, but not be limited to, operational tests and checks of all equipment.
- D. Any defective equipment discovered during any maintenance visit shall be repaired or replaced under the terms of the warranty. The Systems Contractor shall not be liable for equipment damaged by improper use, negligence, or accidental acts of nature.
- E. Warranty and maintenance services shall be restricted to normal working hours unless the Owner agrees to pay the difference in labor rates for overtime work.

### 3.8 NOTEBOOK OF OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

- A. The Systems Contractor shall assemble electronic notebooks (a collection of digital files) for the audio-visual communication system as described below, and forward accurate field drawings of all wire numbers and control panel and patch panel engraving (for use in record drawing revisions) together with the electronic notebooks to the Acoustical Consultant for review.
- B. The Acoustical Consultant will insert simplified operating instructions, warranty information, and one-line diagrams of record for the audio-visual communication system into the electronic notebooks. The Acoustical Consultant will then forward the electronic notebooks to the Owner through the Architect.



- C. The information described below shall be neatly organized, named appropriately, and placed in a separate folder structure named by room/system type listed above and as follows:

MULTIPURPOSE ROOM  
OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS AND MANUALS  
DISCOVERY AND SOUTH VALLEY MIDDLE SCHOOLS  
LIBERTY, MISSOURI

- D. Digital notebook contents shall include the following sections, each noted in the table of contents:
1. Table of Contents, with main entries for each major section and equipment category, and sub-entries for each equipment manual included.
  2. System Operating Instructions, to be provided by the Acoustical Consultant.
  3. System Warranty information, to be provided by the Acoustical Consultant.
  4. One-line Diagrams of Record, to be provided by the Acoustical Consultant.
  5. Shop/As-Built Drawings.
  6. Equipment Manuals, including manufacturer's warranty information, manufacturers' operating instructions, manufacturers' service manuals having schematic diagrams and parts lists, and any other information pertaining to the operation and routine maintenance of each major item of electronic equipment. This documentation shall be organized and divided into the equipment type categories used in this specification (i.e. Microphones, Microphone Accessories, etc.); either as separate PDF files or as a single file with PDF bookmarks.
  7. Equipment software and configuration files, control system code and configuration files, and any software licenses.
  8. Video archive of the training session(s), described below.
  9. Any other documentation deemed pertinent to the operation and maintenance of the sound reinforcement system.
- E. The electronic version of all the notebook contents shall be provided on a USB drive. All software files shall be included on each USB drive.
- F. If additional project closeout document requirements are listed elsewhere in the project manual, those requirements shall also be followed in addition to these closeout document requirements.

### 3.9 SYSTEM OPERATING ASSISTANCE

- A. After the audio-visual communication system has received its final testing and equalization and is fully operational, the Systems Contractor and Acoustical Consultant shall instruct designated representatives of the Owner in the proper methods of system operation.
1. The Acoustical Consultant, as part of the System Commissioning agreement, will perform one (1) complete end user training on the systems as a whole.
  2. The Systems Contractor shall provide a manufacturer authorized instructor for one (1) advanced training session on the Digital Mixing Console.
- B. The Systems Contractor shall provide video recording for at least one session of each of the system overview and mixing console training sessions described above for inclusion in the Notebook of Operating Instructions.
1. Each recording shall include an introduction that identifies the system, location and equipment being demonstrated. Recordings shall be made with a high-quality camera and microphone, using a tripod where possible, and with proper lighting. Provide additional portable lighting if ambient light is insufficient for recording.
  2. Recordings shall be provided in the MP4 file format, with a minimum 720P resolution, as part of the electronic notebook described above.
- C. The Systems Contractor shall provide system operating assistance for the first two major uses of the completed audio-visual communication system. This assistance shall be provided at the times required by the Owner and there shall be no extra charge for work during this time prior to or after the normal working day.

## PART 4 - EQUIPMENT SCHEDULES

### 4.1 STANDBY EQUIPMENT

- A. The Systems Contractor shall have the following standby equipment on hand at the job site during the period set aside for system equalizing for the possible replacement of defective components. All unused standby equipment and any replaced equipment shall remain the property of the Systems Contractor

1. Connectors and wiring used in equipment racks.

### 4.2 BASE BID PORTABLE EQUIPMENT QUANTITY

- A. Quantities shown below are only for portable equipment not permanently mounted and/or not permanently connected to the audio-visual communication system. Refer to the drawings for other equipment quantities, or as noted, for additional requirements. Systems Contractor shall unbox, assemble, test, and store portable equipment where appropriate.
- B. Provide Velcro One-Wrap cable straps, or similar, for all portable cables.
- C. Refer to the Products section above for exact specified models. For generic accessories, a Basis of Design is listed below, and alternative products from other manufacturers are acceptable, provided that they are equivalent to the Basis of Design.
- D. Quantities listed below are PER MIDDLE SCHOOL.

QTY	DESCRIPTION	REFER TO PRODUCTS ABOVE	BASIS OF DESIGN LISTED BELOW
<b>MICROPHONES</b>			
6	Handheld Microphones	X	
2	Instrument Microphones	X	
2	Aerobics Microphones	X	
18	Earset Microphones - Beige	X	
6	Earset Microphones - Black	X	
<b>MICROPHONE ACCESSORIES</b>			
4	Lavalier Microphone Accessories Kits	X	
2	Microphone Floor Stands		Konig & Meyer 27195
4	3-foot Microphone Extension Cables, coded black		ProCo EXMN-3
4	6-foot Microphone Extension Cables, coded black		ProCo EXMN-6
4	15-foot Microphone Extension Cables, coded black		ProCo EXMN-15
4	25-foot Microphone Extension Cables, coded red		ProCo EXMN-25
4	50-foot Microphone Extension Cables, coded blue		ProCo EXMN-50
2	75-foot Microphone Extension Cables, coded white		ProCo EXMN-75
2	15-foot Microphone Extension Cables with Neutrik NC3FX-S cord switch, coded black		ProCo EXMN-15
1	Microphone Cable Tester		Whirlwind Tester
2	25-foot Antenna Extension Cables		Shure UA825
2	50-foot Antenna Extension Cables		Shure UA850
<b>MIXING CONSOLES</b>			
2	Portable Digital Audio Input Device		Audinate AVIO ADP-DAI-AU-2X0

2	Portable Digital Audio Output Device		Audinate AVIO ADP-DAO-AU-2X0
<b>LOUDSPEAKERS AND ACCESSORIES</b>			
4	Portable Monitor Loudspeakers	X	
4	Loudspeaker Support Stands		Konig & Meyer 21435
<b>WIRELESS HEARING ASSISTANCE SYSTEM – RADIO FREQUENCY</b>			
8	Personal Receivers	X	
8	Earphones	X	
3	Neckloops	X	
1	Storage Case	X	
<b>PRODUCTION INTERCOMMUNICATION SYSTEM</b>			
1	Wireless Intercom System (Base Station, 6 Single Ear Headsets, 2 Dual Ear Headsets, Charging Base, 9 batteries, Case	X	
4	Spare Batteries	X	
<b>AUDIO ACCESSORIES</b>			
2	6-foot Audio Cable, stereo interconnect, dual RCA plug to dual RCA plug		Hosa HRR-005X2
2	6-foot Audio Cable, stereo breakout, 1/8-inch TRS phone plug to dual TS 1/4-inch phone plug		Hosa HMP-006Y
2	12-foot Audio Cable, stereo breakout, 1/8-inch TRS phone plug to dual TS 1/4-inch phone plug		Hosa HMP-012Y
2	6-foot Audio Cable, stereo breakout, 1/8-inch TRS phone plug to dual RCA plugs		Hosa HMR-006Y
2	12-foot Audio Cable, stereo breakout, 1/8-inch TRS phone plug to dual RCA plugs		Hosa HMR-012Y
2	6-foot Audio Cable, stereo interconnect, 1/8-inch TRS phone plug to 1/8-inch TRS phone plug		Hosa HMM-005
1	6-foot Audio Cable, instrument interconnect, 1/4-inch TS phone plug to 1/4-inch TS phone plug		Hosa HPP-006
1	15-foot Audio Cable, instrument interconnect, 1/4-inch TS phone plug to 1/4-inch TS phone plug		Hosa HPP-015
2	Audio Adapter, 3-pin XLR female to 3-pin XLR female		Hosa GXX-145
2	Audio Adapter, 3-pin XLR male to 3-pin XLR male		Hosa GXX-144
2	Audio Adapter, 3-pin XLR female to 1/4-inch TRS phone plug		Hosa GXP-143
2	Audio Adapter, 3-pin XLR male to 1/4-inch TRS phone plug		Hosa GXP-246
2	Audio Adapter, pair of adapters, 1/4-inch TS phone plug to RCA jack		Hosa GPR-101
1	Isolation Transformer, 3-pin XLR female to 3-pin XLR male		ProCo ITX
1	Isolation Transformer, 3-pin XLR male to 1/4-inch stereo phone plug		ProCo ITX-BQ
1	Isolation Transformer, 1/8-inch TRS phone jack to 3-pin XLR male.		ProCo Isopod

2	Audio Adapter Pouch		Audio-Technica AT-BG2
1	Instrument Direct Box		Radial Engineering PRODI
1	Computer Direct Box		Radial Engineering PROAV2
1	Stereo Headphones		Audio-Technica ATH-M70x
<b>VIDEO DISTRIBUTION</b>			
1	Type 2 Network Video Input	X	
1	Type 2 Network Video Output	X	
<b>VIDEO ACCESSORIES</b>			
1	6-foot HDMI Extension Cables		Extron HDMI Ultra/6
1	12-foot HDMI Extension Cables		Extron HDMI Ultra/12
1	25-foot HDMI Extension Cables		Extron HDMI Pro/25
1	Video Adapters, male Mini DisplayPort to female HDMI		Extron MDP-HDMIF/6
1	Video Adapters, male Type-C USB to female HDMI		Extron USBC-HDF/0.5
<b>ETHERNET NETWORKS</b>			
2	6-foot Type 1 Network Extension Cables		ProCo PCE2-6
2	25-foot Type 1 Network Extension Cables		ProCo PCE2-25
2	50-foot Type 1 Network Extension Cables		ProCo PCE2-50
6	6-foot Type 2 Network Extension Cables		ProCo PCE1-6
2	25-foot Type 2 Network Extension Cables		ProCo PCE1-25
2	50-foot Type 2 Network Extension Cables		ProCo PCE1-50
<b>AC POWER</b>			
2	25-foot Type 1 AC Power Extension Cables		ProCo E143-25
2	50-foot Type 1 AC Power Extension Cables		ProCo E143-50
2	25-foot Type 2 AC Power Extension Cables		ProCo PWRCON/15M-25
2	50-foot Type 2 AC Power Extension Cables		ProCo PWRCON/15M-50
2	10-foot Type 3 AC Power Extension Cables		ProCo PWRCON20-10
<b>MISCELLANEOUS</b>			
2	USB Worklights		Middle Atlantic LT-GN-PL
4	Sets of rack and drawer keys	X	

END OF SECTION 274116

## SECTION 275116 - PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Loudspeakers.
  - 2. Conductors and cables.
  - 3. Raceways.
- B. Scope of Work: Existing Liberty South Valley Middle School, Discovery Middle School, and EPiC Elementary intercom system is to be expanded for new IECC shelter addition. Expansion includes a new head end in main office: ThreeSixty Galaxy system. The new system will reuse existing cabling for call buttons and speakers. New system will require a 240-station galaxy, 2 amplifiers, rack with a door, master phone, rack monitor, keyboard, programming and testing of all existing locations and new locations in new shelter wing included. New shelter public address system to provide a new dedicated zone for the new IECC 500 multipurpose shelter space and a separate paging zone to cover all new corridors /restrooms / conference rooms– see plans. Provide new call buttons in new IECC 500 multipurpose shelter space as indicated on plans to initiate communication with the office.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Operation and maintenance data.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. ThreeSixty – Galaxy AG1240 (rack, amplifiers and cards). RMM425 for keyboard and monitor.

#### 2.2 GENERAL EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility of Components: Coordinate component features to form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.

#### 2.3 LOUDSPEAKERS

- A. Cone-Type Loudspeakers:
  - 1. Minimum Axial Sensitivity: 91 dB at one meter, with 1-W input.
  - 2. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 50 to 15,000 Hz.
  - 3. Size: 8 inches with 1-inch voice coil and minimum 5-oz. ceramic magnet.
  - 4. Minimum Dispersion Angle: 100 degrees.
  - 5. Rated Output Level: 10 W.
  - 6. Matching Transformer: Full-power rated with four taps. Maximum insertion loss of 0.5 dB.
  - 7. Surface-Mounting Units: Ceiling, wall, or pendant mounting, as indicated, in steel back boxes, acoustically dampened. Front face of at least 0.0478-inch steel and whole assembly rust proofed and shop primed for field painting.

8. Flush-Ceiling-Mounting Units: In steel back boxes, acoustically dampened. Metal ceiling grille with white baked enamel.

B. Horn-Type Loudspeakers:

1. Type: Single-horn units, double-reentrant design, with minimum full-range power rating of 15 W.
2. Matching Transformer: Full-power rated with four standard taps. Maximum insertion loss of 0.5 dB.
3. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 250 to 12,000 Hz.
4. Dispersion Angle: 130 by 110 degrees.
5. Mounting: Integral bracket.
6. Units in Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Listed and labeled for environment in which they are located.

## 2.4 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Jacketed, twisted pair and twisted multipair, untinned solid copper.

1. Insulation for Wire in Conduit: Thermoplastic, not less than 1/32 inch thick.
2. Plenum Cable: Listed and labeled for plenum installation, white or gray color.

## 2.5 RACEWAYS

A. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

1. Outlet boxes shall be not less than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS

A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.

B. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Cable Installation Requirements:

1. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at outlets and terminals.
2. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Arrange on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Cables may not be spliced.
3. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
6. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend speaker cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceiling by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.

3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or be in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.
- B. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Color-code conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they identify media in coordination with system wiring diagrams.
- C. Wall-Mounted Outlets: Flush mounted.
- D. Conductor Sizing: Unless otherwise indicated, size speaker circuit conductors from racks to loudspeaker outlets not smaller than No. 18 AWG and conductors from microphone receptacles to amplifiers not smaller than No. 22 AWG.
- E. Speaker-Line Matching Transformer Connections: Make initial connections using tap settings indicated on Drawings.
- F. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

#### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Prepare a list of final tap settings of paging speaker-line matching transformers.

**END OF SECTION 275116**





## **SECTION 275145 - TWO-WAY EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO SYSTEM**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SCOPE OF WORK**

- A. Provide an in-building radio signal amplification system to provide complete coverage in the new addition of the existing building for the public safety agencies as required by the local AHJ (Authority Having Jurisdiction). System users shall receive and transmit radio signals from their portable radio units within the building. This shall be accomplished utilizing the following components:
  - 1. Bi Directional Amplifiers (Signal Boosters)
  - 2. Coaxial Cable
  - 3. Antennas
  - 4. Cable taps
  - 5. Connectors
  - 6. Power dividers
  - 7. Other components and interconnecting circuitry as required
- B. The system shall comply with the requirements of UL2524 In-building 2-Way Emergency Radio Communication Enhancement Systems, NFPA 72 2013 Edition, NFPA 1221 2016 Edition and IFC 2015, as referenced.
- C. The entire system shall meet the requirements of the Fire Department, the Building Department and all other agencies and authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- D. The work in this section shall include the responsibility for all permit requirements with the AHJ. Where filings require engineer's signature, documents shall be submitted for his review and signature. This responsibility shall include furnishing of required quantities of floor plans, descriptive notes and/or specifications, wiring diagrams, shop drawings and amendment forms.
- E. Early completion of the in-building emergency radio communication enhancement system will be required as to permit a Certificate of Occupancy to be obtained in a timely manner
- F. Any permits necessary for the installation of the work shall be obtained prior to the commencement of the work. All permit costs and inspection fees shall be included
- G. The in-building emergency radio communication enhancement system shall use a UL2524, NFPA 72, NFPA 1221 and IFC 2018 compliant signal booster or approved equal.
- H. System to tie into and expand upon existing two way responder radio head end from previous phase.

#### **1.3 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Design requirements
  - 2. Technical and performance requirements
  - 3. Conductors and cables
  - 4. Raceways

#### **1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For intercommunications and program systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
  - a. Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance.
  - b. Single-line diagram showing interconnection of components.
  - c. Cabling diagram showing cable routing.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For intercommunications and program systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. A record of Owner's equipment-programming option decisions.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this project and a valid FCC-issued general radio operator's license.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified agency, with the experience and capability to conduct testing indicated with a valid FCC-issued general radio operator's license.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted repeaters with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Notifier, by Honeywell.
  2. Or approved equal.

#### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. In-building emergency radio communication enhancement systems for emergency responders are an integral component of the life safety equipment of a building or structure. The primary function is to provide reliable emergency responder communications at the required signal strength within the specified areas.
- B. Critical Areas such as emergency command center, fire pump room, exit stairs, exit passageways, elevator lobbies, standpipe cabinets, sprinkler sectional valve locations and similar critical areas shall be provided with 100% floor area radio coverage.
- C. General building areas shall be provided with 95% radio coverage, or as specified by AHJ.
- D. The In-building emergency radio communication enhancement systems must provide the following signal strengths:
  1. Downlink - Minimum signal strength of -95 dBm throughout the coverage area.
  2. Uplink - Minimum signal strength of -95 dBm received at the AHJ Radio System.
  3. OR As otherwise required by the AHJ
- E. The system shall be complete with all components and wiring required for compliance with all applicable codes and regulations, and for its operations described hereinafter.

- F. An approved manufacturer or a qualified and approved vendor shall supply, test and determine locations of components which are required for proper operation as well as to supply, install, test and certify the performance of the complete system. Vendor qualifications must be acceptable to the AHJ.
- G. Design shall include iBwave software-simulated radio propagation modeling with heat maps showing predicted signal coverage levels within the building. The iBWave design shall be done by iBWave certified personnel.
- H. All tests shall be conducted, documented, and signed by a person in possession of an FCC General Radio Telephone Operators License. All testing personnel shall be certified and authorized by the signal booster manufacturer in the installation and operation of their equipment. Personnel qualifications must be acceptable to the AHJ.
- I. The system design shall be based on UL2524, NFPA 72, NFPA 1221, IFC and FCC certified to establish standards of quality for materials and performance. The naming of a specific manufacturer or a catalog number does not waive any requirement or performance of individual components described in the specifications.
- J. Assembly and installation of all components of the Emergency Responder Radio Communication Enhancement System shall comply with all applicable sections of the National Electrical Code.
- K. Survivability from attack by fire shall meet requirements of NFPA 72, NFPA 1221, IFC or as required by the local jurisdiction.
- L. The system must comply with all applicable sections of the FCC rules. Signal booster shall have FCC certification prior to installation.
- M. Antenna isolation shall be maintained between the donor antenna and all inside antennas (D.A.S.) to a minimum of 20dB under all operating conditions

## 2.3 TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. The system specified shall be based upon UL2524, NFPA72, NFPA 1221, IFC compliant signal boosters
- B. The signal booster shall be a Class B Public Safety type as designated by the FCC or as required by the AHJ.
- C. The secondary power supplies, battery chargers and system monitoring shall be fully compliant with NFPA 72, NFPA 1221 and IFC. The signal booster shall have both the primary and the secondary power supplies within a waterproof, type-4 approved enclosure.
- D. All signal boosters and other active system components must have FCC certification prior to installation. The equipment FCC ID must be shown on the product datasheets and technical submittals. The ID must also be displayed on the product as required by the FCC.
- E. The signal booster shall be pre-set by the equipment manufacturer for the frequencies specified by the AHJ. Field tuning of RF filters and duplexers is not allowed.
- F. UHF and VHF signal boosters shall be band selective type with a maximum 3dB channel bandwidth of 200KHz ( $F_c \pm 100\text{KHz}$ ) per band. Non-selective wide-band signal boosters shall not be accepted, unless required to cover multiple channels within the same band.
- G. Signal Boosters shall have oscillation suppression circuitry to protect the public safety radio system in case of system malfunction or other causes. The oscillation suppression circuit shall not disable the system operation. Systems that automatically disable the signal booster upon oscillation detection shall not be allowed.
- H. Signal Boosters shall have uplink noise suppression function to eliminate uplink noise while in standby (i.e. no radio transmission from within a building). Systems that produce any measurable level of uplink noise while in standby shall not be allowed.
- I. Signal Booster gain shall be rated at minimum of 80dB and the gain shall be adjustable in a minimum of 30dB range. System gain shall be set and documented at the time of the final system test.
- J. Maximum Propagation delay of the signal booster system shall be 14 $\mu\text{s}$  (microseconds) or as specified by AHJ.

- K. The signal booster system shall include built-in automatic supervision of malfunctions of the signal booster and battery system as per NFPA 1221 NFPA 72 and IFC. Non-OEM equipment add-ons and modifications to comply with this specification shall not be allowed.
- L. A dedicated supervised monitoring panel shall be provided within the emergency command center next to the fire alarm panel / annunciator or other location as designated by AHJ to annunciate the status of all signal booster locations. The monitoring panel shall provide visual and labeled indication of the following for each signal booster:
  - 1. Normal AC power
  - 2. Signal booster trouble
  - 3. Antenna Failure
  - 4. Loss of normal AC power
  - 5. Failure of battery charger
  - 6. Low battery capacity
- M. Signal booster to be supervised by the fire alarm control panel. The signal booster system shall include a compatible, built-in addressable monitoring module with universal normally open relays for connection to external monitoring modules.
- N. External filters, duplexers, power supplies or other non-OEM additions or modifications of the original equipment shall not be allowed. All duplexers shall be built-in and FCC certified with the signal booster as a complete and fully integrated FCC-certified and UL-Listed unit.
- O. All signal booster components shall be contained in a type-4 approved waterproof enclosure. All enclosures shall be painted red with external labeling as required by the AHJ.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

- A. Initial survey of installation sites for general requirements (AC power and HVAC).
- B. Verify site for satisfactory floor/wall space mounting requirements.
- C. Provide and install stand-alone grounding systems at building for RF infrastructure and Bi-Directional Amplifier, to include grounding of transmission line coaxial suppression devices.
- D. Provide and install and connect ground buss bar to contractor installed ground system. Connect RF surge suppression devices and RF infrastructure devices to buss bar. Installation to meet Motorola R56 standards.

## 2.5 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Communications Cable: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:
  - 1. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP complying with UL 1685
  - 2. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CM, Type CMG, Type CMP, Type CMR, or Type CMX in metallic conduit installed per NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at outlets and terminals.
- B. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Arrange on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Cables may not be spliced.
- C. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
- E. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.

- F. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used.
- G. Installation of all components of the Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System shall comply with all applicable sections of the National Electrical Code NFPA-70, NFPA-72, NFPA 1221, IFC or as required by the local AHJ.
- H. At least 2 independent and reliable power supplies shall be provided as specified in NFPA 72, NFPA 1221 and IFC.
- I. The primary power source shall be supplied from a dedicated twenty (20) ampere branch circuit and comply with NFPA-70 National Electrical Code, NFPA 72 and NFPA 1221 2016 edition. Coordinate with electrical contractor. Circuit from nearest normal 120V panel.
- J. The signal booster shall be equipped with a secondary source of power. The secondary source of power shall be a battery system with a dedicated battery charger powered by a separate, dedicated twenty (20) ampere branch circuit. The secondary power supply shall power on automatically when the primary power source is lost. The secondary source of power shall be capable of operating the emergency responder radio coverage enhancement system for a period of at least 24 hours. The battery system shall automatically charge in the presence of external power input. Battery charger and all other electronic components must be fully enclosed in a waterproof Type-4 approved enclosure. Batteries shall be enclosed in a separate, vented Type-3R approved enclosure. External UPS (Uninterruptable Power Supplies) are not acceptable..

### 3.2 GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- B. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
- C. Install grounding electrodes as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.3 ACCEPTANCE AND TEST PROCEDURES

- A. Acceptance testing for an in-building radio system is required upon completion of installation.
- B. The coverage testing shall be done in accordance with NFPA 72, NFPA 1221, IFC and as required by the local AHJ
- C. All tests shall be conducted, documented, and signed by a person in possession of a current FCC General Radio Operator License.
- D. All test records along with system diagrams, iBWave design, equipment specifications, user manuals, RF link budget calculations, battery backup calculation and other design data shall be submitted upon completion of the project, and as required by the AHJ.

### END OF SECTION 275145



## **SECTION 280500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
  - 2. Sleeve seals.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Common electronic safety and security installation requirements.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES**

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

#### **2.2 SLEEVE SEALS**

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Calpico, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Co.
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

#### **2.3 GROUT**

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electronic safety and security equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

### 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY PENETRATIONS

- A. Electronic safety and security penetrations occur when raceways, pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
  - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.



### 3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electronic safety and security installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

**END OF SECTION 280500**



## **SECTION 280513 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Low-voltage control cabling.
  - 2. Control-circuit conductors.
  - 3. Fire alarm wire and cable.
  - 4. Identification products.

#### **1.2 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - 1. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
    - a. Nominal OD.
    - b. Minimum bending radius.
    - c. Maximum pulling tension.
- B. Shop Drawings: Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Maintenance data.

#### **1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PATHWAYS**

- A. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
  - 1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
  - 2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
  - 3. Straps and other devices.
- B. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.

#### **2.2 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE**

- A. Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
  - 1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned copper conductors.
  - 2. PVC insulation.
  - 3. Unshielded.
  - 4. PVC jacket.

5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- B. Plenum-Type, Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned copper conductors.
  2. PVC insulation.
  3. Unshielded.
  4. PVC jacket.
  5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- C. Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
  2. PVC insulation.
  3. Unshielded.
  4. PVC jacket.
  5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- D. Plenum-Type, Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
  2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
  3. Unshielded.
  4. Plastic jacket.
  5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

## 2.3 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway complying with UL 83.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway complying with UL 83.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or TF, complying with UL 83.

## 2.4 FIRE ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Comtran Corp.
  2. Draka USA.
  3. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
  4. Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corporation.
  5. West Penn Wire/CDT; a division of Cable Design Technologies.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, size as recommended by system manufacturer.
  1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.
  1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum.
  2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.
  3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NRTL listed for fire alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.

## 2.5 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Brady Corporation
  2. HellermannTyton.
  3. Kroy LLC.
  4. Panduit Corp.

- B. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
- B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." for installation of conduits and wireways.
- D. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
- E. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
  1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
  2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
  3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
  4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
  5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- F. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
  1. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets or terminals.
  2. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, and terminals.
  3. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
  4. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  5. Pulling Cable: Do not exceed manufacturer's instructions as to allowable pulling tension. Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. Open-Cable Installation:
  1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.

2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
  3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
- D. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
  2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.

### 3.3 FIRE ALARM WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
- C. Wiring Method:
1. Cables and raceways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
  2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of 2-hour, fire-rated fire alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
  3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables may be installed in the same cable or raceway as signaling line circuits.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch conduit between the fire alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

### 3.4 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No. 14 AWG.
  2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
  3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits, No. 12 AWG.

### 3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.6 GROUNDING

- A. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding.
  - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding, and bonding.
- B. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

**END OF SECTION 280513**





## **SECTION 283111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire-alarm control unit.
  - 2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
  - 3. System smoke detectors.
  - 4. Heat detectors.
  - 5. Notification appliances.
  - 6. Device guards.
  - 7. Magnetic door holders.
  - 8. Remote annunciator.
  - 9. Addressable interface device.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for cables and conductors for fire-alarm systems.
- C. Scope of work: Provide a new voice evacuation fire alarm system for the new IECC 500 multipurpose shelter addition at Liberty South Valley, Discovery Middle Schools and EPiC Elementary. The existing horn/strobe system within the existing building is to remain in service. Provide all power supplies and required system interfaces to provide synchronization between the new voice evacuation system and the existing horn/strobe system.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- C. HLI: High Level Interface.
- D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- E. PC: Personal computer.
- F. VESDA: Very Early Smoke-Detection Apparatus.
- G. Pathway: Any circuit, conductor, optic fiber, radio carrier, or other means connecting two or more locations.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.
  - 1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
  - 4. Detail assembly and support requirements.

5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
6. Include battery-size calculations.
7. Include input/output matrix.
8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
11. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
  - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
  - b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level III minimum.
  - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
  - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
  - d. Riser diagram.
  - e. Device addresses.
  - f. Record copy of site-specific software.
  - g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
    - 1) Equipment tested.
    - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
    - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
    - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
    - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
  - h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
  - i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
2. Smoke Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
3. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamperproofed components.
4. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level III technician.
- C. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
  2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Noncoded, UL-certified, non-proprietary addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice/strobe evacuation.
- B. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- C. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:
  1. Manual stations.
  2. Heat detectors.
  3. Smoke detectors.
  4. Duct smoke detectors.
  5. Carbon monoxide detectors.
  6. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
  1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.
  2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
  3. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
  4. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
  5. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
  6. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
  7. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
  8. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
  9. Activate elevator power shunt trip.
  10. Activate emergency lighting control.
  11. Record events in the system memory.
  12. Record events by the fire alarm control panel stored memory.
- C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
  1. Valve supervisory switch.
  2. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.

3. Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
4. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
5. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
10. Voice signal amplifier failure.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Initiate notification appliances.
2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
3. Record the event on internal memory of control panel.

## 2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Notifier.
2. Edwards (United Technologies Corp).

B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
  - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
  - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder.
  - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
  - d. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.
4. **LCD screen with readout of alarms.**

C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.

1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 80 characters, minimum.
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.

D. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:

1. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
2. Serial Interfaces:
  - a. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
  - b. One USB or RS 232 port for PC configuration.
  - c. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.

E. Smoke-Alarm Verification:

1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Record events by the fire alarm control unit.

4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
  5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.
- F. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
  2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
  3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.
- G. Elevator Recall:
1. Elevator recall shall be initiated only by one of the following alarm-initiating devices:
    - a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
    - b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
    - c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
  2. Elevator controller shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor if lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors are activated.
  3. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.
    - a. Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.
- H. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke-barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.
- I. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on fire alarm control unit LCD screen for read out.
- J. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as a special module that is part of fire-alarm control unit.
1. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711.
    - a. Allow the application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and, at the same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
    - b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
    - c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
    - d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
  2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones.
  3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
- K. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also print system reset event, including same information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.
- L. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals and supervisory communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
- M. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.

- N. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

## 2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
  2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.

## 2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
  2. Detectors shall be four-wire type.
  3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
  4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
  5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
  6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
  7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.
    - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
    - b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.
    - c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
    - d. Sensitivity levels based on time of day.
- B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
  2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
    - a. Primary status.
    - b. Device type.
    - c. Present average value.
    - d. Present sensitivity selected.
    - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
  2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
    - a. Primary status.
    - b. Device type.
    - c. Present average value.
    - d. Present sensitivity selected.
    - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
  3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
  4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
  5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
  6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

## 2.6 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

- A. General: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.
  - 1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.
  - 2. Testable by introducing test carbon monoxide into the sensing cell.
  - 3. Detector shall provide alarm contacts and trouble contacts.
  - 4. Detector shall send trouble alarm when nearing end-of-life, power supply problems, or internal faults.
  - 5. Comply with UL 2075.
  - 6. Locate, mount, and wire according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Provide means for addressable connection to fire-alarm system.
  - 8. Test button simulates an alarm condition.

## 2.7 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
  - 1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
- B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per minute unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
  - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg.
  - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
  - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

## 2.8 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
  - 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- C. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol. Provide weather proof rated horns where indicated.
- D. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch high letters on the lens.
  - 1. Rated Light Output:
    - a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
  - 2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
  - 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
  - 5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
  - 6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.
- E. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:
  - 1. Comply with UL 1480.
  - 2. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
  - 3. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
  - 4. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
  - 5. Mounting: Surface mounted and bidirectional.

6. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

## 2.9 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.
  1. Electromagnets: Require no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force.
  2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
  4. Rating: 120-V ac.
- B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

## 2.10 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
  1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

## 2.11 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
  1. Include address-setting means on the module.
  2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
  3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall and to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.
  1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
  2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Control Module:
  1. Operate notification devices.
  2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

## 2.12 DEVICE GUARDS

- A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
  1. Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
  2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### 3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
  - 1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
  - 2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
  - 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
  - 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
  - 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
  - 1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
  - 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
  - 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
  - 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A in NFPA 72.
  - 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
  - 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.
  - 1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.
- H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

### 3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Plenum rated cable shall be used for all pathways except where cabling is in conduit.
- B. Pathways above recessed accessible locations may be routed exposed.
- C. Pathways above inaccessible locations shall be installed in EMT.
- D. Pathways in exposed areas shall be routed in EMT and be painted red enamel.

- E. Pathways from main fire alarm control panel to each zone/building shall be routed underground to lower level mechanical or electrical room. Initial auxiliary panel(s) shall be located in these rooms. All cabling within the building zone shall be installed as specified above.

#### 3.4 ZONES

- A. Provide a fire alarm zone for each building that is identified on architectural code plans (CP Series). Fire alarm activation and notification by zone/building.

#### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
  - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
  - 1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
  - 2. Magnetically held-open doors.
  - 3. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
  - 4. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
  - 5. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
  - 6. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
  - 7. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
  - 8. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
  - 9. Alarm-initiating connection to kitchen hood fire extinguishing system.
  - 10. Fire alarm system to be interfaced with intercommunications system to shunt audio from the intercom system when the fire alarm system is in an alarm condition. Provide fire alarm system with relay output for interface connections as required.

#### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

#### 3.7 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

#### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
    - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.

2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
  4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
  - F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
  - H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
  - I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

### 3.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
  3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

### 3.10 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

### 3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

## END OF SECTION 283111



## **SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
  - 2. Removing existing vegetation.
  - 3. Clearing and grubbing.
  - 4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
  - 5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
  - 6. Temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary utility services, construction and support facilities, security and protection facilities, and temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Execution" for field engineering and surveying.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.
- B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- C. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil and is the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.
- D. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.
- E. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.
- F. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

#### **1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP**

- A. Except for stripped topsoil and other materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site. All stripped topsoil shall remain onsite and be distributed onsite per the Construction Manager's direction. See Earth Moving specification for soil material instruction.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
  - 1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or videotape.
  - 2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.
- B. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Salvageable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service and appropriate City and County agencies for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- D. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control and plant-protection measures are in place.
- E. Protect existing trees as indicated on drawings.
- F. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
  - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
  - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
  - 3. Foot traffic.
  - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
  - 5. Impoundment of water.
  - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
  - 8. Sediment encroachment.
- G. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- H. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.
- I. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the topsoil is dry or slightly moist.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material shall be provided by the Geotechnical Engineer.
  - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site. Coordinate with Geotechnical engineer for acceptable soil material.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
  - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
- C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- D. Contractor to keep inspection logs of erosion control measures.

### 3.3 TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

- A. General: Protect trees and plants remaining on-site according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- B. Contractor to protect existing trees onsite as indicated on drawings.
- C. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, as indicated on drawings.
- D. For trees to be removed, remove entire root ball, all root and organic materials.

### 3.4 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Contractor to arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
  - 1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped that serve existing buildings before proceeding with site clearing.
  - 2. Utility service shall be maintained to the existing school building during construction of the proposed building. Contractor shall coordinate with utility service providers to provide temporary service to the existing building as necessary. See demolition notes on drawings.
- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities serving existing buildings. Completely remove service lines, meters, poles, etc. associated with utility services.
  - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
  - 2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.
- D. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:

1. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Construction Managers and Owners written permission.

### 3.5 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
  1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density per geotechnical report requirements.

### 3.6 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
  1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
  2. Geotechnical engineer to monitor stripping operations to observe that all unsuitable materials have been removed.
- C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.
  1. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
  2. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
  3. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for resspreading deeper topsoil.
- D. Remove all topsoil and all organic material from proposed building footprint and pavement areas. Excavate as deep as necessary to ensure all organic material has been removed.

### 3.7 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated from the site. See demolition notes on drawings.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
  1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
  2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions. Keep paint off surfaces that will remain exposed.

### 3.8 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus unsuitable soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

END OF SECTION 311000



## SECTION 312000 – EARTH MOVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. The geotechnical reports for the projects were prepared by Kruger Technologies, Inc., dated June 23-27.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
  - 2. Preparing subgrade for pavements and grass areas.
  - 3. General earthwork and excavation.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.

#### 1.3 UNCLASSIFIED SITE

- A. All site work for this project is considered "unclassified." The term "unclassified" excavation shall be defined as meaning the site contractor bears the entire risk of the soil quantities and/or types (e.g. rock, clay, peat, silt, shale, etc.) encountered above the bottom of required excavations and over-excavated / treated soils areas. Above the bottom of required excavations, the site contractor shall bear the entire cost of such additional work in the event it becomes necessary for unsuitable soils to be handled, removed from the site, or for suitable fill material to be imported to the site. This definition of "unclassified" supersedes any contrary definitions or statements which may be contained in the specifications, plans, or other contract documents. The unclassified site shall include all work above the bottom of required excavations and/or required soil remediation/replacement.
- B. The contractor shall be responsible to determine earthwork quantities and shall familiarize themselves with the geotechnical report. All import or export of earth material shall be the responsibility of the contractor at his expense.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
  - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- C. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- D. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- E. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- F. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

- G. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.
- H. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:
  - 1. Geotextiles.
  - 2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
  - 3. Warning tapes.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill according to Geotechnical Engineer requirements.
- D. Preexcavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 and ASTM D 3740 for testing indicated.
- B. Preexcavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
  - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service and City and County agencies for area where Project is located before beginning earth moving operations.
- D. Do not commence earth moving operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures, are in place.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.

- B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM according to ASTM D2487, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
  - 1. Liquid Limit: Per geotechnical report.
  - 2. Plastic Limit: Per geotechnical report.
- D. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D2487, or a combination of these groups.
  - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- E. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural stone or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- F. Sub-drainage Aggregate: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural stone, clean with no fines. Aggregate range shall be ½" to ¾".

## 2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
  - 1. Survivability: Class 3; AASHTO M 288.
  - 2. Grab Tensile Strength: 120 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
  - 3. Sewn Seam Strength: 222 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
  - 4. Tear Strength: 50 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
  - 5. Puncture Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
  - 6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
  - 7. Permittivity: 1.7 second-1, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
  - 8. UV Stability: 70 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
  - 1. Red: Electric.
  - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
  - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  - 4. Blue: Water systems.
  - 5. Green: Sewer systems.
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
  - 1. Red: Electric.
  - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
  - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  - 4. Blue: Water systems.
  - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.
- D. Prepare low-volume-change subgrade material beneath proposed building per Building Pad Preparation section in this specification.

### 3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
  - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

### 3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

### 3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions above the bottom of required excavations. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer.

### 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Evaluate surfaces under future walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades, and excavate unsuitable materials as determined by the geotechnical engineer.

### 3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
  - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Clearance: As indicated on plans.

### 3.7 PAVEMENT SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify testing agency when excavations have reached required subgrade.

- B. If Geotech Engineer determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade below proposed pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades. Proof-roll within two days of paving operations.
  - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
  - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed to the proper moisture content and density.
  - 3. After proof rolling and repairing deep subgrade deficiencies, the entire subgrade should be scarified to a depth of 8 inches and uniformly compacted to at least 95% of the standard proctor maximum dry density to provide a uniform subgrade for pavement construction. Moisture content and density of subgrade to be checked within two days prior to the commencement of paving operations.
- D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, without additional compensation.
- E. Subgrades under pavements and building pads shall be free of all organic material.

### 3.8 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

### 3.9 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
  - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
  - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
  - 5. Removing trash and debris.
  - 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- C. Backfill tree root ball excavations with structural fill as determined by geotechnical engineer. Areas under pavements or building pads shall be compacted to 95% standard density. All other areas shall be compacted to 90% standard density.

### 3.10 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.
- D. Install a clay plug around pipes within 5' of the building face to prevent water migration through the trench into the building. Plug material should consist of clay compacted at a water content at or above the soils optimum water content.

- E. Utility trenches should be backfilled per plan details.

### 3.11 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in 8 inch loose lifts and compacted to at least 95% of the materials max dry density and moisture control.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- D. The exposed grade prior to fill being placed shall be scarified to a minimum depth of 12" and the moisture content should be adjusted to within the range recommended for structural fill. The material should then be proof-rolled, compacted, and inspected by the geotechnical engineer.
- E. Bench existing slopes of 5:1 or greater where fill is to be placed.

### 3.12 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction per the geotechnical report requirements.
  - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
  - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, soil material that is not suitable per geotechnical engineer inspection.

### 3.13 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compacted soil material in areas under pavements or building pads shall be compacted to 95% standard density. All other areas shall be compacted to 90% standard density.
- D. Utility trenches – compaction testing to be performed every 200 cubic yards at backfill or each lift within 200 linear feet of trench, whichever is less.

### 3.14 BUILDING PAD PREPARATION

- A. Prepare low-volume change material, capillary barrier, and vapor barrier for the building pad. The LVC shall consist of the following section from the bottom: 18" of MoDOT Type 5, and 4" capillary barrier.
- B. Moisture condition and compact native soils below the LVC zone as necessary per geotechnical report and onsite geotechnical representative.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade below proposed building pads with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades. Proof-roll within two days of building pad construction.
  - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
  - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed to the proper moisture content and density.

3. After proof rolling and repairing deep subgrade deficiencies, the entire subgrade should be scarified and uniformly compacted to at least 95% of the standard proctor maximum dry density to provide a uniform subgrade for building pad construction. Moisture content and density of subgrade to be checked within two days prior to the commencement of building pad construction.

### 3.15 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  2. Walks: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.
  3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.

### 3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
  2. Determine that fill material and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
  3. Determine, at the required frequency, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

### 3.17 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Install erosion control measures as indicated on the plans. Install additional measures as necessary to prevent erosion or damage to erosion control measures.
- C. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
  1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- D. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
  1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

### 3.18 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Transport surplus satisfactory soil offsite. Stockpile / spread topsoil per contract documents prior to soil removal from site.

1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000



## **SECTION 321216 - ASPHALT PAVING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for aggregate subbase and base courses.
  - 2. Division 32 Sections for other paving installed as part of crosswalks in asphalt pavement areas.

#### **1.3 DEFINITION**

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
  - 1. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.
- B. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer. Certifying that each material complies with or exceeds specified requirements.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each paving material.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with a history of successful performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who is trained and approved for installations required for this Project.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of the pavement specifications called out in the geotechnical report for asphalt paving work.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at a site acceptable to the Construction Manager.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
    - b. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
    - c. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.
    - d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
  - 1. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 50 deg F.
  - 2. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D 3910.
  - 3. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
  - 4. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 50 deg F at time of placement and when base is dry.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS AND MIXES

- A. General: All work on the site as herein called for shall be done in accord with the American Public Works Association (APWA), Kansas City Metropolitan Chapter, Division II, "Construction and Materials Specifications for Paving", Section 2200, latest edition. The work herein required is not of the magnitude of work described in the aforesaid Standard Specification, therefore only applicable limitations will be enforced. However, this is not a relaxing of the requirements for the quality of the work. When work is obviously substandard, necessary tests will be made for compliance to the specifications. Work found to be in noncompliance with the specification shall be removed and replaced at the expense of the Contractor, including the costs of all tests.
  - 1. Use locally available materials and gradations that exhibit a satisfactory record of previous installations.
- B. Base Course Mix: Conform to requirements for mix designations APWA Type 1-01, per section 2205 of referenced APWA Specifications. Recycled content per APWA specifications allowed.
- C. Surface Course Mix: Conform to requirements for mix designation APWA Type 3-01, per Section 2205 of referenced APWA Specifications. Recycled content per APWA specifications allowed.
- D. Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, ready-mixed complying with AASHTO M248, Type I.
  - 1. Colors: White.

### 2.2 ASPHALT-AGGREGATE MIXTURE

- A. Provide plant-mixed, hot-laid asphalt-aggregate mixture complying with ASTM D 3515 and as recommended by local paving authorities to suit project conditions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below proposed pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades. Proof-roll within two days of paving operations.
  - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.

2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed to the proper moisture content and density.
  3. After proof rolling and repairing deep subgrade deficiencies, the entire subgrade should be scarified to a depth of 8 inches and uniformly compacted to at least 95% of the standard proctor maximum dry density to provide a uniform subgrade for pavement construction. Moisture content and density of subgrade to be checked within two days prior to the commencement of paving operations.
- C. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, without additional compensation.
- D. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
- B. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

### 3.3 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
  2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
  3. Spread mix at minimum temperature required by the mix design and outside temperature.
  4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

### 3.4 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
  2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
  3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
  4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time.
  5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
  6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

### 3.5 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
  - 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
  - 1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 6927, but not less than 94 percent nor greater than 100 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

### 3.6 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for 5 days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
  - 1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
  - 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM standards.
  - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
  - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
    - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
    - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
- E. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

### 3.9 DISPOSAL

- A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
  - 1. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

END OF SECTION 321216

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK

## **SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Curbs and gutters.
  - 2. Walks.
  - 3. Driveways.
  - 4. Pavement.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants in expansion and contraction joints within concrete paving and in joints between concrete paving and asphalt paving or adjacent construction.
- C. All concrete shall conform with the Kansas City Metro Materials Board minimum 4000 PSI granite mix (KCMMB 4K). If there are any contradictions to this mix in this specification, the KCMMB 4K mix shall govern.

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

#### **1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified ready-mix concrete manufacturer, and testing agency.
- D. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
  - 1. Cementitious materials.
  - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
  - 3. Admixtures.
  - 4. Curing compounds.
  - 5. Applied finish materials.
  - 6. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
  - 7. Joint fillers.
- E. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:
  - 1. Aggregates. Include service-record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
  - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
- C. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- D. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to concrete paving, including but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Concrete mixture design.
    - b. Quality control of concrete materials and concrete paving construction practices.
  - 2. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with concrete paving to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    - d. Concrete paving subcontractor.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
  - 1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

### 2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, fabricated from steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60; deformed.
- C. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 plain-steel bars. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- D. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.



## 2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, gray or white portland cement Type I.
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C.
  - 2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag or Type IP, portland-pozzolan cement.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Aggregates shall be in accordance with KCMMB-4K specifications. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service-record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar paving applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
  - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement and shall meet KCMMB 4K mix.
- C. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
  - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

## 2.4 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Axim Italcementi Group, Inc.; Caltexol CIMFILM.
    - b. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC; Confilm.
    - c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
    - d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Aquafilm.
    - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film (J-74).
    - f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; BurkeFilm.
    - g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Eucobar.
    - h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; VaporAid.
    - i. Lambert Corporation; LAMBCO Skin.
    - j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-CON.
    - k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; EVAPRE.
    - l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
    - m. Nox-Crete Products Group; MONOFILM.
    - n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
    - o. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film.
    - p. Symons by Dayton Superior; Finishing Aid.
    - q. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2120 TRI-FILM.
    - r. Unitex; PRO-FILM.
    - s. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; A-H Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
  - b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
  - c. Conspec by Dayton Superior; D.O.T. Resin Cure, DSSCC Clear Resin Cure.
  - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
  - e. Edoco by Dayton Superior; DSSCC Clear Resin Cure, Resin Emulsion Cure V.O.C. (Type I).
  - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez W VOX.
  - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
  - h. Lambert Corporation; AQUA KURE - CLEAR.
  - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M CURE R.
  - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100-CLEAR SERIES.
  - k. Nox-Crete Products Group; Resin Cure E.
  - l. SpecChem, LLC; PaveCure Rez.
  - m. Symons by Dayton Superior; Resi-Chem Clear.
  - n. Tamms Industries, Inc., Euclid Chemical Company (The); TAMMSCURE WB 30C.
  - o. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation.
  - p. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

## 2.5 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork in preformed strips.
- B. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
  1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- C. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ChemMasters; Exposee.
    - b. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Delay S.
    - c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Etch (J-73).
    - d. Edoco by Dayton Superior; True Etch Surface Retarder.
    - e. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Surface Retarder Formula S.
    - f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Expose.
    - g. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; TOP-STOP.
    - h. Metalcrete Industries; Surfard.
    - i. Nox-Crete Products Group; CRETE-NOX TA.
    - j. Scofield, L. M. Company; LITHOTEX Top Surface Retarder.
    - k. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Rugasol-S.
    - l. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Etch.
    - m. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-6000 Concrete Surface Retarder.
    - n. Unitex; TOP-ETCH Surface Retarder.
    - o. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex Envioset.

## 2.6 WHEEL STOPS

- A. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, 3000-psi minimum compressive strength, 4-1/2 inches high by 9 inches wide by 72 inches long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside and holes for anchoring to substrate.
  1. Dowels: Galvanized steel, 3/4 inch in diameter, 10-inch minimum length.

## 2.7 CONCRETE CURBS

- A. Curbs to comply with the plan details.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience. Use ASTM C150, Type 1 – portland cement. Aggregates per KCMMB-4K specifications.
  - 1. See concrete requirements in geotechnical report.
  - 2. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
  - 3. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi.
  - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
  - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches plus or minus 1 inch for paving and 2" plus or minus one inch for curbs and gutters.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
  - 1. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1 percent.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- F. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage by weight of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
  - 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - 3. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - 1. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
  - 2. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Notify testing agency when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below proposed pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades. Proof-roll within two days of paving operations.

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
  2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed to the proper moisture content and density.
  3. After proof rolling and repairing deep subgrade deficiencies, the entire subgrade should be scarified to a depth of 8 inches and uniformly compacted to at least 95% of the standard proctor maximum dry density to provide a uniform subgrade for pavement construction. Moisture content and density of subgrade to be checked within two days prior to the commencement of paving operations.
- C. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, without additional compensation.
- D. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

### 3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

### 3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.
- F. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) overlap of adjacent mats.

### 3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.

2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
  3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent or epoxy bonding adhesive at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
  3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
  4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
  5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
  6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
    - a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
  2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
    - a. Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
  3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- E. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
  1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.

- H. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
- I. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
- J. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
- K. Slip-Form Paving: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce paving to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
  - 1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of slip-form paving machine during operations.
- L. Cold-Weather Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
  - 1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
- M. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
  - 1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  - 3. Fog-spray forms and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

### 3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
  - 1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
  - 2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

### 3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound or a combination of these as follows:

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
  - a. Water.
  - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
  - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas that have been subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.9 PAVING TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
  1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
  2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
  3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch.
  4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches of tie bar.
  5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch.
  6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch.
  7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches of dowel.
  8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
  9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
  10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

### 3.10 CONCRETE CURBS

- A. Install curbs per plan details.

### 3.11 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for 30 days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements outlined in the geotechnical report.

### 3.13 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.

- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313



## **SECTION 321373 - CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cold-applied joint sealants.
  - 2. Hot-applied joint sealants.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 321216 "Asphalt Paving" for constructing joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for constructing joints in concrete pavement.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Pavement-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.

#### **1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for joint sealants.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

#### **1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer.
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

### 2.2 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 5893, Type NS.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafcro Inc., an ERGON company; RoadSaver Silicone.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 888.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 301 NS.
- B. Single-Component, Self-Leveling, Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 5893, Type SL.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafcro Inc., an ERGON company; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 300 SL.
- C. Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-200.

### 2.3 HOT-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 3406.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Crafcro Inc., an ERGON company; Superseal 444/777.
- B. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: ASTM D 6690, Types I, II, and III.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Hi-Spec or Sealtight 3405.
    - b. Right Pointe; D-3405 Hot Applied Sealant.

### 2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control joint-sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- D. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control joint-sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.

## 2.5 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Joint-Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install joint-sealant backings of kind indicated to support joint sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint-sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint-sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent joint-sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install joint sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place joint sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

- E. Tooling of Nonsag Joint Sealants: Immediately after joint-sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to the following requirements to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint:
  - 1. Remove excess joint sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess joint sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses, by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

#### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants, during and after curing period, from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations in repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

#### 3.6 PAVEMENT-JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints within cement concrete pavement:
  - 1. Joint Location:
    - a. Expansion and isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete pavement.
    - b. Other joints as indicated.
  - 2. Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: Single component, nonsag or single component, self-leveling.
  - 3. Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: Multicomponent, pourable.
  - 4. Hot-Applied Joint Sealant for Concrete: Single component.
  - 5. Joint-Sealant Color: Grey.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.
  - 1. Joint Location:
    - a. Joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Hot-Applied Joint Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single component.
  - 3. Retain subparagraph below if joint sealants specified are offered in a choice of colors and colors are not specified on Drawings. Typically, color choice is not available for pavement joint sealants.
  - 4. Joint-Sealant Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

END OF SECTION 321373

## **SECTION 323113 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Chain-link fences.
  - 2. Gates: Swing.

#### **1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - 1. Fence and gate posts, rails, and fittings.
  - 2. Chain-link fabric, reinforcements, and attachments.
  - 3. Gates and hardware.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show accessories, hardware, gate operation, and operational clearances.

#### **1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences and gates shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

#### **1.5 WARRANTY**

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Faulty operation of gates.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC**

- A. General: Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist. Comply with CLFMI Product Manual and with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Fabric Height: Fence to surround track to be 6' high.

2. Steel Wire Fabric: Wire with a diameter of 0.148 inch, 9 gauge
  - a. Mesh Size: 2 inches
  - b. Zinc-Coated Fabric: ASTM A 392, Type II, Class 1, 1.2 oz./sq. ft. with zinc coating applied after weaving.
  - c. Vinyl-Coated Fabric: ASTM F 668, Class 2b fused over zinc -coated steel wire.
    - 1) Color: Black, complying with ASTM F 934.
  - d. Coat selvage ends of fabric, that is metallic coated before the weaving process, with manufacturer's standard clear protective coating.
3. Selvage: Knuckled at both selvages.

## 2.2 FENCE FRAMING

- A. Posts and Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043 for framing, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts. Provide members with minimum dimensions and wall thickness according to ASTM F 1043 based on the following:
  1. Fence Height: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Light Industrial Strength: Material Group IC-L, round steel pipe, electric-resistance-welded pipe.
    - a. Line Post: 2.375 inches in diameter, SS40 (3.12 lbs/ft)
    - b. End, Corner and Pull Post: 2.875 inches in diameter, SS40 (4.64 lbs/ft)
  3. Horizontal Framework Members: Top rails complying with ASTM F 1043.
    - a. Top Rail: 1.66 inches in diameter.
  4. Metallic Coating for Steel Framing:
    - a. Type A zinc coating.
  5. Vinyl coating over metallic coating.
    - a. Color: Black, complying with ASTM F 934.

## 2.3 TENSION WIRE

- A. Vinyl-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch diameter, tension wire complying with ASTM F 1664, Class 2b fused zinc-coated steel wire.
  1. Color: Black, complying with ASTM F 934.

## 2.4 SWING GATES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM F 900 for gate posts and single and double swing gate types.
  1. Gate Leaf Width: As indicated on drawings.
  2. Gate Fabric Height: As indicated on drawings.
- B. Pipe and Tubing:
  1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Comply with ASTM F 1043 and ASTM F 1083; protective coating and finish to match fence framing.
  2. Gate Posts: Round tubular steel, 2.875 inches in diameter (5.79 lbs/ft)
  3. Gate Frames and Bracing: Round tubular steel matching fencing

- C. Frame Corner Construction: Assembled with corner fittings.
- D. Hardware:
  - 1. Hinges: 360-degree inward and outward swing.
  - 2. Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate with provision for padlocking accessible from both sides of gate.
  - 3. Provide a gate stop for all gates.
- E. Pipe and Tubing:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated Steel: Protective coating and finish to match fence framing.
  - 2. Gate Posts: Round tubular steel, 4.00 inches in diameter (9.11 lf/ft), coating matching fencing.
  - 3. Gate Frames and Bracing: Round tubular steel, matching fencing
- F. Frame Corner Construction: Welded and 3/8 inch diameter, adjustable truss rods for panels 5 feet or wider
- G. Hardware:
  - 1. Provide latch. Padlock and chain to be provided by the Owner.
  - 2. Tire with Post: Provide inflatable tire on galvanized post at leading edge of gate. Tire shall swivel on post.

## 2.5 FITTINGS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM F 626.

## 2.6 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout, recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
- B. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with potable water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install chain-link fencing to comply with ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements indicated.

### 3.4 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacings indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil.
- B. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
  - 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
  - 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
    - a. Concealed Concrete: Top 2 inches below grade to allow covering with concrete sidewalk.
- C. Terminal Posts: Locate terminal end, corner, and gate posts per ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 30 degrees or more.
- D. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at 8' o.c.
- E. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with 0.120-inch diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of 24 inches o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
  - 1. Extended along bottom of fence fabric. Install top tension wire through post cap loops. Install bottom tension wire within 6 inches of bottom of fabric and tie to each post with not less than same diameter and type of wire.
- F. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer.
- G. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to outside of enclosing framework. Leave 1 inch between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.
- H. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at one end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric per ASTM F 626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.
  - 1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches o.c. and to braces at 24 inches o.c.

### 3.5 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.



END OF SECTION 323113

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK

## **SECTION 333100 - FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. Manholes.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Pipes and fittings.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. Manholes.

- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

#### **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. PVC Gravity Sewer Piping:
  - 1. Pipe: ASTM D 3034, SDR 26, PVC sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends for gasketed joints.
  - 2. Fittings: ASTM D 3034, PVC with bell ends.
  - 3. Gaskets: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals.

#### **2.2 CLEANOUTS**

- A. PVC Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Canplas LLC.
  - b. IPS Corporation.
  - c. NDS.
  - d. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Zurn Light Commercial Products Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

### 2.3 MANHOLES

- A. Manholes shall be per detail on construction documents and comply with City standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in the Earth Moving Section.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewer piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- D. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  1. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
- E. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  1. Join PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.

### 3.4 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use PVC pipe fittings in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts and use PVC pipe for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
  1. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
  2. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in the parking lot area.

- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in pavement areas in a cast-in-place-concrete block, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep with 12 inches of treated 95% compacted subgrade below concrete. Set with top flush with surrounding pavement.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- B. Make connections to existing / proposed piping and underground manholes and sewer mains.
  - 1. Connect to existing / proposed City sanitary sewer manholes and sewer mains. Coordinate with the City prior to installing sewer service on the school site and sewer mains and manholes in the public right-of-way.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
  - 1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
  - 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  - 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  - 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
  - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  - 2. Test completed piping systems according to State Minimum Standards of Design.
  - 3. Perform low pressure air testing per the latest version of ASTM C828-76T per State Minimum Standards of Design.
  - 4. Test pipe for pipe deflection per State Minimum Standards of Design. The pipe deflection shall not exceed 5% of the inside diameter of the pipe.
  - 5. Schedule tests and inspections by City with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  - 6. Submit separate report for each test.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and superfluous material from interior of piping. Flush with potable water.

### 3.8 WATER MAINS NEAR SANITARY SEWERS

- A. Horizontal Separation: Whenever possible, a water main shall be laid at least 10 feet horizontally from any sanitary sewer, storm sewer, or manhole. When local conditions prevent a lateral separation of 10 feet, a water main may be laid closer than 10 feet to a sanitary or storm sewer, provided that the water main is laid in a separate trench, or on an undisturbed earth shelf located on one side of the sewer at such an elevation that the bottom of the water main is at least 24 inches above the top of the sewer. When it is impossible to obtain proper horizontal and vertical separation as stipulated above, both the water main and sewer must be constructed of mechanical or slip-on ductile-iron pipe, or prestressed concrete cylinder pipe and should be pressure tested to assure water tightness before backfilling.
- B. Vertical Separation: Whenever water mains must cross sanitary sewers, house sewers, or storm drains, the water main shall be laid at such an elevation that the bottom of the water main is 24 inches above the top of the drain or sewer. A full length of water main pipe shall be centered over the sewer line to be crossed so that the joints will be

equally distant from the sewer and as remote therefrom as possible. This vertical separation shall be maintained for the portion of the water main located within 10 feet, horizontally, or any sewer or drain it crosses.

- C. Unusual Conditions: Where conditions prevent the minimum vertical separation set forth above from being maintained, or when it is necessary for the water main to pass under a sewer or drain, the water main shall be laid with slip-on or mechanical joint ductile-iron pipe which must extend on each side of the crossing to a distance from the sewer of at least 10 feet. In making such a crossing, a full length of water main pipe must be centered over or under the sewer to be crossed, so that the joints will be equidistant from the sewer and as remote therefrom as possible. The sewer line must also be constructed of ductile-iron pipe with slip-on or mechanical joints until the normal distance from the sewer line to the water main is at least 10 feet. Where a water main must cross under a sewer, a vertical separation of 24 inches between the bottom of the sewer and the top of the water main shall be maintained, with adequate support, especially for the larger sized sewer lines to prevent them from settling on and breaking the water main. The sewer shall be constructed of ductile-iron pipe for a distance of 10 feet on either side of the crossing, or other suitable protection as approved by the Engineer shall be provided. Where these conditions cannot be met, the Engineer shall be consulted as to the precautions to be taken to protect the public water supply.
- D. Sewer Manholes: No water pipe shall pass through, or come in contact with, any part of a sewer or a sewer manhole.

END OF SECTION 333100

## **SECTION 334100 - STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. End sections / pipe outfalls.

#### **1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Trench Drain: Include elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and depths.
  - 2. Drain Basin: Include elevations, details, covers, and depths.
  - 3. Concrete Structures: Include elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and depths.
  - 4. End Sections: Product specifications and grate protection.

#### **1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
- D. Handle stormwater inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

#### **1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

#### **2.1 PE PIPE AND FITTINGS**

- A. HDPE Dual-Wall Pipe and Fittings NPS 3 to NPS 10: AASHTO M 252M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
  - 1. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 252M, corrugated, matching tube and fittings.

- B. HDPE Dual-Wall Pipe and Fittings NPS 12 to NPS 60: AASHTO M 294M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
  - 1. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 294M, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings.

## 2.2 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe: ASTM D1785 Schedule 40 PVC, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
- B. PVC pipe to be used as riser pipe for building downspouts below grade.

## 2.3 CONCRETE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings conforming to ASTM C76.
  - 1. Bell-and-spigot ends with gasketed joints. O-ring gaskets shall be synthetic rubber and shall conform to ASTM C361 and ASTM C443.
  - 2. Class III, Wall B.

## 2.4 CLEANOUTS

- A. Plastic Cleanouts:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Canplas LLC.
    - b. IPS Corporation.
    - c. NDS Inc.
    - d. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - f. Zurn Light Commercial Products Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
  - 2. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

## 2.5 PIPE OUTLETS

- A. Install concrete toe wall on pipe end section and turf reinforcement mat at pipe end sections. See plans for location and details.
- B. Pipe outfalls shall have HDPE or CMP pre-manufactured end sections.
- C. HDPE end sections shall conform to ASTM D3530 minimum cell classification 213320C. End sections shall have a toe plate to cast into a concrete toe wall.
- D. Corrugated metal end sections shall be fabricated from galvanized base metal, conform to ASTM A 760/A, and meet CMP pipe manufacturer design standards. End sections shall have a toe plate to cast into a concrete toe wall.

## 2.6 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, and the following:
  - 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
  - 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
  - 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
  - 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
  - 1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
  - 2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed steel.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- D. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.
- E. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
  - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.
  - 2. Install PE corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321.
  - 3. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
  - 4. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
  - 1. Join corrugated PE piping according to ASTM D 3212 for push-on joints.
  - 2. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cemented joints.
  - 3. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
  - 4. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible couplings.

### 3.4 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
  - 1. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
  - 2. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

### 3.5 PVC DRAIN BASINS

- A. PVC drain basins shall be installed per ASTM D2321 and manufacturer specifications.

### 3.6 TRENCH DRAIN

- A. Install trench drain per manufacturer specifications.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Section 221413 "Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Make connections to piping.
  - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections unless a structure is indicated.
  - 2. Make connections to structures by cutting into existing unit and creating an opening large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe, manhole, or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
    - a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
  - 3. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
  - 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
  - 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
  - 1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
  - 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
  - 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  - 4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
  - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  - 2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  - 4. Submit separate report for each test.
  - 5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
    - a. Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - b. Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
    - c. Option: Test concrete piping according to ASTM C 924.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with water.

END OF SECTION 334100

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK

## **SECTION 334600 - SUBDRAINAGE**

### **PART 1 GENERAL**

#### **1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following types of subdrainage system work:
  - 1. Foundation wall drainage system.
  - 2. Footing drainage system at elevator pit.
  - 3. Insulative drainage panels and geotextile filter fabrics as part of each system.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 012300 "Alternates" for those alternates effecting work of this Section.
  - 2. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete retaining and foundation walls.

#### **1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each item specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate locations of pipe layouts, connections, cleanouts, and invert elevations of each system. Include locations of connections to storm drainage system and locations of "terminations to daylight".

#### **1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS**

- A. Installer Qualifications:
- B. Certifications: Submit certification signed by subdrainage system installer that installed materials conform to specified requirements and each system installation was successfully checked and tested prior to backfilling.

#### **1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

- A. Project Record Documents: Submit under provisions of Section 017839 and as follows:
  - 1. Accurately record actual locations of pipe layouts, connections, cleanouts, and invert elevations of each system. Include locations of connections to storm drainage system and locations of "terminations to daylight".
  - 2. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions and discovery of any uncharted utilities.

#### **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed subdrainage systems similar in material, design and extent to those indicated for this Project; and whose subdrainage systems have a record of successful in-service performance.

#### **1.6 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate subdrainage system installation with excavating, trenching and backfilling of related trades.
  - 1. Coordinate piping terminations with storm drainage system as occurs.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DRAINAGE PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. General: Provide drainage system complete with pipe, bends, reducers, adapters, couplings, caps, collars and joint materials.
- B. PE Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 405 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
  - 1. Provide perforated and non-perforated pipe as specified later in this Section.
    - a. Provide NPS 4 pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Large Diameter PE Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 667 or AASHTO M 252, Type CP; corrugated, for coupled joints.
  - 1. Provide perforated and non-perforated pipe as specified later in this Section.
    - a. Provide pipe size indicated.
- D. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe and Fittings: Comply with ASTM D 2729.
  - 1. Provide perforated and non-perforated pipe as specified later in this Section.

### 2.2 INSULATIVE DRAINAGE PANELS / PROTECTION BOARD (334600.A02)

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Insul-Drain" Drainage Board as manufactured by Owens Corning. Comparable products from other manufacturers will be considered when submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
- B. Product Characteristics:
  - 1. Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, with geotextile on one face, ASTM C 578, Type IV, 2 inches thick on foundation and elevator pit walls. Side of board with geotextile fabric shall have drainage grooves behind fabric.
  - 2. Drain Capacity shall not be less than 12 gallons/minute/ft per ASTM D 4716.
  - 3. Insulation value shall not be less than R-9.5.

### 2.3 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Soil materials are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
- B. Drainage Fill (334600.A08): Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.

### 2.4 WATERPROOFING FELTS

- A. Material: Comply with ASTM D 226, Type I, asphalt-saturated organic felt.

### 2.5 GEOTEXTILE FILTER FABRICS (334600.A03)

- A. Description: Fabric of PP or polyester fibers or combination of both, with flow rate range from 110 to 330 gpm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM D 4491.
- B. Structure Type: Nonwoven, needle-punched continuous filament.
  - 1. Survivability: AASHTO M 288 Class 2.
  - 2. Styles: Flat and sock.

## 2.6 DRAINAGE PANEL AT RETAINING WALL (334600.A02)

- A. Description: Recycled high-density polyethylene, encapsulated between two layers of special virgin HDPE.
  - 1. Horizontal and Vertical Underground application: Basis of Design "Delta MS-20" by Dorken Systems Inc.
    - a. Compressive strength: 4,160 psf, ASTM D6364-06.
    - b. Drain capacity between dimples (flow rate @ hydr.grad. 0.1; 5kPa; ASTM D4716-08.
    - c. Accessories: Provide accessories required for installation as recommended by the manufacturer.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 SUBDRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place impervious (clay) fill material on subgrade adjacent to bottom of footing after concrete footing forms have been removed. Place and compact impervious fill to dimensions indicated, but not less than 6 inches deep and 16 inches wide.
- B. Install insulative drainage panels on foundation walls as follows:
  - 1. Coordinate placement with other drainage materials. Provide insulative drainage panels over all waterproofing to perform as a drainable protection board.
  - 2. Lay perforated drainage pipe at base of footing. Install as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article.
  - 3. Separate 4 inches of fabric at beginning of roll and cut away 4 inches of core. Wrap fabric around end of remaining core.
  - 4. Attach panels to wall beginning at subdrainage pipe. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall.
- C. Lay flat-style geotextile filter fabric in trench and overlap trench sides.
- D. Place supporting layer of drainage course over compacted subgrade and geotextile filter fabric, to compacted depth of not less than 4 inches.
- E. Encase pipe with sock-style geotextile filter fabric before installing pipe. Connect sock sections with adhesive or tape.
- F. Install drainage piping as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Installation" Article for foundation/retaining wall subdrainage.
- G. Add drainage course to width of at least 6 inches on side away from wall and to top of pipe to perform tests.
- H. After satisfactory testing, cover drainage piping with drainage fill to width of at least 6 inches on side away from footing and above top of pipe to within 12 inches of finish grade. Encapsulate drainage fill in filtration fabric.
- I. Install drainage course and cover top of drainage course with waterproofing felt.
  - 1. Place layer of waterproofing felt over top of drainage course, overlapping edges at least 4 inches.
- J. Place backfill material over compacted drainage course. Place material in loose-depth layers not exceeding 8 inches. Thoroughly compact each layer. Final backfill to finish elevations and slope away from building.
- K. Install drainage panel at retaining wall according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install piping beginning at low points of system, true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Bed piping with full bearing in filtering material. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions and other requirements indicated.

1. Foundation and Retaining Wall Subdrainage: Install piping level and with a minimum cover of 36 inches unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Retaining-Wall Subdrainage: Install piping with a pitch of 1/16 to 1/8 inch per foot and with a minimum cover of 36 inches unless otherwise indicated. Terminate as indicated.
  3. Lay perforated pipe with perforations down.
  4. Excavate recesses in trench bottom for bell ends of pipe. Lay pipe with bells facing upslope and with spigot end entered fully into adjacent bell.
- B. Use increasers, reducers, and couplings made for different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings being connected. Reduction of pipe size in direction of flow is prohibited.
- C. Install thermoplastic piping according to ASTM D 2321.

### 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join perforated PE pipe and fittings with couplings according to ASTM D 3212 with loose banded, coupled, or push-on joints.
- B. Special Pipe Couplings: Join piping made of different materials and dimensions with special couplings made for this application. Use couplings that are compatible with and fit materials and dimensions of both pipes.

### 3.5 BACKWATER VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for backwater valves specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Install horizontal backwater valves in header piping downstream from perforated subdrainage piping.
- C. Install horizontal backwater valves in piping in manholes or pits where indicated.

### 3.6 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping."
- B. Cleanouts for Foundation and Retaining-Wall Subdrainage:
1. Install cleanouts from piping to grade. Locate cleanouts at beginning of piping run and at changes in direction. Install fittings so cleanouts open in direction of flow in piping.
  2. In vehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 cast-iron soil pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 18 by 18 by 12 inches deep. Set top of cleanout flush with grade.
  3. In nonvehicular-traffic areas, use NPS 4 cast-iron or PVC pipe and fittings for piping branch fittings and riser extensions to cleanout. Set cleanout frames and covers in a cast-in-place concrete anchor, 12 by 12 by 4 inches deep. Set top of cleanout 1 inch above grade.
  4. Comply with requirements for concrete specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 334100 "Storm Utility Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect low elevations of subdrainage system to building's solid-wall-piping storm drainage system.
- C. Where required, connect low elevations of foundation subdrainage to stormwater sump pumps. Comply with requirements for sump pumps specified in Section 221429 "Sump Pumps."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:



1. After installing drainage course to top of piping, test drain piping with water to ensure free flow before backfilling.
  2. Remove obstructions, replace damaged components, and repeat test until results are satisfactory.
- B. Drain piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clear interior of installed piping and structures of dirt and other superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted pipe at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 334600

